

We hold these truths

Jim Coetzee

Foreword

This book is written to record some of the primary tenets of our Nazarene Jewish faith. The initial believers in Yahshua the Messiah were identified as the Jewish sect of the Nazarenes, according to Acts 24: 5 and 14. Rav Shaul (Paul) was identified as the ring-leader of the Nazarenes. However, since not all of us are Jewish by birth, we are known as Nazarene Israel, due to the law of inheritance recorded in Galatians 3: 26 to Galatians 4: 31 and Galatians 6: 16.

As Nazarenes it is our duty to ensure that our brethren are conversant with our teachings, so as to protect themselves from false doctrines.

Note: All Scriptures used are from the 'NEW AMERICAN STANDARD BIBLE', unless otherwise indicated. Set-apart Names corrected in quotes used, in accord with this Bible's 'Principles of Translation'.

We hold these truths

By Jim Coetzee

This book is not to be sold. We are told in the second part of Matthew 10: 8 “*freely you received, freely give.*”

The book contains a number of sermons that I gave over the past few months and is intended as a reference manual for like-minded Nazarene Jewish/Israelite believers.

Published by the Nazarene Israelite Two House Congregation of Port Elizabeth. June 2008.

Acknowledgements

I thank the leader of my previous association the late Mr. H W Armstrong, Rabbi Moshe Koniuchowsky and Dr. James Trimm, for the Scriptural truths that I learnt from them over many years. This book reflects my personal understanding, and might not be in accord with the interpretation of my teachers. When we read any man's interpretation of the Scriptures we need to do what the Bereans did as recorded in Acts 17: 10 – 11 "*examining the Scriptures daily, to see whether these things were so.*" – Not, not so.

Thank you also to my wife Hannah, who helped me type, my son Derek and members and friends of the Nazarene Israelite Two House Congregation of Port Elizabeth, who assisted in proof reading.

Index

Chapter	Page
1 What time is it?	5
2 Who is Yahshua?	12
3 Are we teaching truth?	25
4 Our covenant relationship with YHVH our Elohim.	36
5 The image of Elohim.	39
6 Why do we keep the Set-apart days of YHVH?	49
7 When do we start counting the Omer (First Fruits)?	56
8 Who has the oracles of YHVH our Elohim?	61
9 Immersion and the Passover.	67
10 Haughtiness, Deception and a Lack of Faith.	78
11 More deception.	84
12 The Restoration of all Israel.	91
13 The Temple of Elohim.	98
14 Do we believe in Yahshua our Jewish Messiah?	104
15 What is true Faith?	111
16 The Order of Melchizedek.	118
17 Are we Nazarenes?	125
18 Gratitude.	133
19 Feast of Trumpets (Yom Teruah).	140
20 Scriptural health laws.	148
21 What does it mean to walk in Messiah's Halakah?	155
22 What is the way of Elohim?	162
23 What does it mean to be born again?	170
24 How long are we going to condone paganism?	181
25 Days of Unleavened Bread.	189
26 Between the evenings – what does it mean?	193
27 The timing of the Passover according to the Nazarene System.	201
28 The great falling away.	207
29 The world to come – what will it be like.	215
30 When does a day begin?	223
31 Who do you worship?	233
32 The Eternal.	244
33 How many roads to salvation?	251
34 Yahshua as Savior and King.	262
35 Contact details of publisher.	272

Chapter 1: What time is it?

What time is it in relation to the plan of salvation of YHVH for all mankind, today? We who have been keeping the Feast days of YHVH for a number of years now, should know that time is getting short. We should also fully understand the signs of the times as it is put 1 Thessalonians 5: 1- 6: **1 "Now as to the time and the epochs, brethren, you have no need of anything to be written to you. 2 For you yourselves know full well that the day of YHVH will come just like a thief in the night. 3 While they are saying, "Peace and Safety!" then destruction will come upon them suddenly like birth pangs upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape. 4 But you, brethren, are not in darkness, that the day should overtake you like a thief; 5 for you are all sons of light and sons of day. We are not of the night nor of darkness; 6 so then let us not sleep as others do, but let us be alert and sober."**

We, who keep the Set-apart days of YHVH as a shadow of things to come, know that Yahshua will return one day on the Feast of Trumpets. As we read in 1 Thessalonians 4: 13 – 17: **13 "But we do not want you to be uninformed, brethren, about those who are asleep, that you may not grieve, as do the rest who have no hope. 14 For if we believe that Yahshua died and rose again, even so Elohim will bring with Him those who have fallen asleep in Yahshua. 15 For this we say to you by the word of YHVH, that we who are alive, and remain until the coming of the Master, shall not precede those who have fallen asleep. 16 For the Master Himself will descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trumpet of Elohim; and the dead in Messiah shall rise first. 17 Then we who are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Master in the air."** These are very comforting words, which those who do not keep the Feast days of YHVH do not understand. This is perhaps why there is no urgency in the way they live. People do not plan for anything and live from one day to another; from one Xmas to another, with no real hope of the future.

O yes they do plan their lives, but it has to do from one party to another, or from one sport event to another. Currently the whole of South Africa is planning for the year 2010 when the world will come and play a few matches of soccer here in South Africa. They are planning to build multi-million Rand stadiums, new taxis and a special train to run between Johannesburg and Pretoria. The infrastructure is being considered and plans are afoot to upgrade roads and hospitals for the 1st time in years. However, we know from the power failures of late that there was no planning and/or maintenance done to the electricity infrastructure in the past 12 years. The hospitals and infrastructure has been in a downward spiral since 1994, when the new government took office. From this it is easy to see that the people in South Africa are more concerned about sports, such as rugby, soccer, swimming, etc. than what they care about housing the millions of homeless people, or what they care about the millions of aids victims and orphans that have been left since 1995. In fact the whole world is geared to entertain its population with games and sport activities.

However, we should be different; the things that we pursue in life should be different. We should be far less concerned with sport, entertainment, movies and the like. We should do as Yahshua taught his disciples in Matthew 6: 33 ***“But seek first His kingdom and His righteousness; and all these things shall be added to you.”*** YHVH wants us to enjoy life, but He does not want us to make idols of the things that we enjoy. He wants us to even in our joy remember that He is our creator; He gives us our special talents in sport or otherwise. He wants us to become Set-apart for service to Him, He wants us to devote our lives searching to get into His eternal Kingdom and then all the things that we require to live, will be given to us. The world we live in is of a temporary nature. It is like the days of our lives – within only a few years it is over, but the Kingdom of Elohim will be an everlasting Kingdom.

Our urgency should be comparable with that of someone who has just been told that he or she has cancer. A very old friend of

my wife's phoned her the other day saying that he has cancer. He cried like a baby, telling her that he was very shocked. When I was diagnosed with diabetes a few years ago, I really was scared. I planned to correct my diet and eating habits immediately – as if that would help. I became much more aware of my eating habits and even though I became a little lax at times, I am still careful what I eat, and should be so for the rest of my natural life. Our Father in heaven wants us to be careful what we eat and how we live for the rest of our lives. He wants us to obey him by our actions and have no other interests that could come between us and Him. He is a jealous Elohim and wants us to serve Him in Spirit and in truth.

YHVH wants us to be about His business, without judging the people in the world. YHVH is longsuffering towards us and wants to give us the full opportunity to make it into His Kingdom. If YHVH was only half as harsh a Judge as we are when we judge our fellow human beings, we would have been destroyed long ago. We need to start judging ourselves, instead of our neighbor. Let us not be arrogant, thinking ourselves better than other people. Remember Satan cannot repent any longer as he sinned with full knowledge. Human beings do not have all knowledge. In addition we can misunderstand and are also partly blinded. However, because YHVH has called us, we are supposed to have more knowledge and understanding about Him and His will for us. Therefore we need to be very careful how we judge our neighbor, who has less understanding and knowledge about YHVH and His ways.

We should be able to discern the times and know from the Scriptures that we are very close to the time of the great tribulation. We like our Jewish brothers are currently in the same boat and unless we mend our ways, YHVH will stop to provide or supply our bread and water. If we study these Scriptures we will soon be able to discern that we are living right at the time of the fulfillment of these prophecies. Let us read about this in Isaiah 3: 1 to 26 and see the punishment that is going to be meted out to Jerusalem and Judah at this end time, as follows: ***1"For behold, YHVH Elohim of hosts is going to remove from Jerusalem***

and Judah Both supply and support, the whole supply of bread, And the whole supply of water; 2 The mighty man and the warrior, the judge and the prophet, the diviner and the elder, 3 The captain of fifty and the honorable man, The counselor and the expert artisan, and the skillful enchanter, 4 And I will make mere lads their princes And capricious (whimsical) children will rule over them, 5 And the people will be oppressed, Each one by another, and each one by his neighbor; the youth will storm against the elder, And the inferior against the honorable. 6 When a man lays hold of his brother in his father's house, saying, 'You have a cloak, you shall be our ruler, And these ruins will be under your charge.' 7 On that day will he protest, saying, 'I will not be your healer, For in my house there is neither bread nor cloak; You should not appoint me ruler of the people.' 8 For Jerusalem has stumbled, and Judah has fallen, Because their speech and their actions are against YHVH, To rebel against His glorious presence. 9 The expression of their faces bears witness against them. And they display their sin like Sodom; They do not even conceal it, Woe to them! For they have brought evil on themselves (this is the 1st time that Jerusalem has had a gay parade since the beginning of time – this is really a sign that we are very close the final near destruction of Jerusalem.). 10 Say to the righteous that it will go well with them, For they will eat the fruit of their actions, 11 Woe to the wicked! It will go badly with him, For what he deserves will be done to him. 12 O My people! Their oppressors are children, And women rule over them. O My people! Those who guide you lead you astray, And confuse the direction of your paths. 13 YHVH arises to contend, And stands to judge the people. 14 YHVH enters into judgment with the elders and princes of His people, 'It is you who have devoured the vineyard; The plunder of the poor is in your houses. 15 'What do you mean by crushing My people. And grinding the face of the poor?' Declares YHVH of hosts. 16 Moreover, YHVH said, "Because the daughters of Zion are proud, And walk with heads held high and seductive eyes, And go along with mincing steps, And tinkle the bangles on their feet, 17 Therefore YHVH will afflict the

scalp of the daughters of Zion with scabs, And YHVH will make their foreheads bare.” 18 In that day YHVH will take away the beauty of their anklets, headbands, crescent ornaments, 19 dangling earrings, bracelets, veils, 20 headdresses, ankle chains, sashes, perfume boxes, amulets, 21 finger rings, nose rings, 22 festal robes, outer tunics, cloaks, money purses, 23 hand mirrors, undergarments, turbans, and veils. 24 Now it will come about that instead of sweet perfume there will be putrefaction (rotting or decay); Instead of a belt, a rope; Instead of well-set hair, a plucked-out scalp; instead of fine clothes, a donning of sackcloth; And branding instead of beauty. 25 Your men will fall by the sword, And your mighty ones in battle. 26 And her gates will lament and mourn; And deserted she will sit on the ground.

The time of the end is upon us. YHVH is going to clean up the filth in Jerusalem and Israel, then Yahshua will return and after the cleansing, those in Zion and Jerusalem will be called Set-apart, everyone who is recorded for life in Jerusalem. Let us also read about that in Isaiah 4: 1- 6: ***1 “For seven women will take hold of one man in that day saying, ‘We will eat our own bread and wear our own clothes, only let us be called by your name; take away our reproach!’ 2 In that day the Branch of YHVH will be beautiful and glorious, and the fruit of the earth will be the pride and the adornment of the survivors of Israel. 3 And it will come about that he who is left in Zion and remains in Jerusalem will be called Set-apart – everyone who is recorded for life in Jerusalem. 4 When YHVH has washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and purged the bloodshed of Jerusalem from her midst, by the spirit of judgment and the spirit of burning, 5 then YHVH will create over the whole area of Mount Zion and over her assemblies a cloud by day, even smoke , and the brightness of a flaming fire by night; for over all the esteem will be a canopy. 6 And there will be a shelter to give shade from the heat by day, and refuge and protection from the storm and the rain.”***

We need to become much more urgent at this time. YHVH has already called us out of darkness into His marvelous light. We need to operate as a set-apart nation, as a kingdom of priest and in all earnest start getting the good news about the coming Kingdom of Elohim out into the entire world, before the end of this age, shall come. This is when the true peace of Jerusalem will come, when Yahshua will rule the world from Jerusalem for a thousand years.

It is time for us to pray, asking YHVH to give us back the city where our fathers worshipped Him as given in Isaiah 64: 1- 12 ***“Oh, that Thou wouldst rend the heavens and come down, That the mountains might quake at The presence – 2 As fire kindles the brushwood, as fire causes water to boil – To make Thy name known to Thine adversaries, That the nations may tremble at Thy presence! 3 When Thou didst awesome things which we did not expect, Thou didst come down, the mountains quaked at Thy presence. For from old they have not heard nor perceived by ear, Neither has eye seen an Elohim besides Thee, Who acts in behalf of the one who waits for Him. 5 Thou dost meet him who rejoices in doing righteousness, Who remembers Thee in Thy ways. Behold, Thou wast angry, for we sinned, We continued in them a long time; And shall we be saved? 6 For all of us have become like one who is unclean, And all our righteous deeds are like a filthy garment; And all of us wither like a leaf, And our iniquities, like the wind, takes us away. 7 And there is no one who calls on Thy name, Who arouses himself to take hold of Thee; For Thou hast hidden Thy face from us, And hast delivered us into the power of our iniquities. 8 But now, O YHVH, Thou art our Father, We are the clay, and Thou our potter; And all of us are the work of Thy hand. 9 Do not be angry beyond measure, o YHVH, Neither remember iniquity forever; Behold, look now, all of us are Thy people. 10 Thy Set-apart cities have become a wilderness, Jerusalem desolation. 11 Our Set-apart and beautiful house, Where our fathers praised Thee, Has been burned by fire; And all our precious things have become a***

***ruin. 12 Wilt Thou restrain Thyself at these things, O YHVH?
Wilt Thou keep silent and afflict us beyond measure?***

Brethren it is time to start judging ourselves, lest we be judged by Elohim. We need to start questioning ourselves and make amends. We need to look into the perfect law and see where we fall short. Then we need to repent and return to Torah and the testimony of Yahshua – that is if we are serious about our future in the coming Kingdom of Elohim.

Chapter 2: Who is Yahshua?

Many accept that Yahshua is the Messiah, yet they deny His deity. In 1 Timothy 3: 16 we read: ***“And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: Elohim was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.”***

Yahshua referred to Himself as more than just mere man, when He said in: John 10: 11 ***“I am the good shepherd; the good shepherd lays down His life for the sheep.”*** We know that King David referred to YHVH our Elohim as his shepherd, and here Yahshua essentially says that He is YHVH, by claiming that He is the good shepherd. This occurred during Chanukah or as we read in verse 22 of John 10 (paraphrased) Yahshua was in the Temple during the Feast of Dedication (also known as Chanukah).

In John 10: 30 He makes a statement which really angers the Jews. He says: ***“I and the Father are one.”*** We see in verse 31 that the Jews then took up stones to stone Yahshua, because according to Torah, unless He was truly Elohim, what He was saying was pure Blasphemy. In John 8: 24 Yahshua stated: ***I said therefore to you, that you shall die in your sins; for unless you believe that I am He, you shall die in your sins.”*** What did He mean by making this statement? Let us examine The Scriptures to reveal the answer.

In Exodus 3: 13, 14 & 15 we read: ***‘Then Moses said to Elohim, “Behold, I am going to the sons of Israel, and I shall say to them, ‘The Elohim of your fathers has sent me to you.’ Now they may say to me, ‘What is His name?’ “What shall I say to them?” And Elohim said to Moses, “I AM WHO I AM”¹, and He said, “Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’” And Elohim furthermore, said to Moses,***

¹ The footnote in The American Standard Bible reads: Related to the name of Elohim, YHVH rendered LORD, which is derived from the verb HAYAH – to be.

“Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel, ‘YHVH the Elohim of your fathers, the Elohim of Abraham, the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of Jacob, has sent me to you. ‘This is My name forever, and this is My memorial-name to all generations.’

I AM is the meaning of the Name YHVH, which implies that He is always there (He was always there and He will be always there) or that He is the Eternal. So yes in John 8: 24, Yahshua claims to be YHVH Himself. In addition He states that if we do not believe that, we shall die in our sins. In verse 58 of John 8 Yahshua said to them (the Jews of His day), ***“Truly, truly, I say to you before Abram was born, I am.”*** Here also the Jews picked up stones to stone Yahshua for blasphemy. The Jews understood that Yahshua was claiming His pre-creation existence here. As a second witness to this we read in John 17: 5 Yahshua saying: ***“Now Father, glorify Me together with yourself, with the glory which I had with You before the world was.”*** Only Elohim existed before creation and only He is omnipresent, yet in Matthew 18: 20 Yahshua says: ***“Where two or three have gathered in My name, I am in their midst.”***

In John 14: 1 Yahshua states: ***“...trust in Elohim, trust also in me.”*** Would we trust any man as we would trust Elohim, unless that Man was Elohim Himself?

We have already seen that I AM means YHVH the Eternal – so how could Yahshua make claims like this? O yes, He is our savior or Messiah, but is He our Elohim?

To answer this question we have to go to the book of Isaiah. In Isaiah 45: 15 we read: ***“Truly, Thou art an Elohim who hides Himself, O Elohim of Israel, Savior!”*** Transliterated from Hebrew this last line reads: ***‘Elohey yisrael moshiya.’*** Wow! This is in fact saying that YHVH our Elohim is our savior or messiah. However, we need more Scriptural witnesses, to prove the point that we are trying to make.

Talking about witnesses let us turn to Isaiah 42: 1 where we read: ***“Behold, My Servant; whom I uphold; My chosen one in whom My soul delights. I have put My Spirit upon Him; He will bring forth justice to the nations.”*** This is clearly talking about Yahshua as the servant of YHVH. In Isaiah 43 verses 10 & 11 we read: ***“You are My witnesses,” declares YHVH, And My Servant whom I have chosen, In order that you may know and believe Me, And understand that I am He*** (meaning in the 1st place that He is YHVH and secondly that He is His Servant, or as put in The Jerusalem Bible that it is I). ***Before Me there was no Elohim formed, And there will be none after Me. I, even I, am YHVH; And there is no savior besides Me.”*** O yes, there are no other so called Elohim besides YHVH – He is not three persons or gods in one! He is only One! But He is also our Savior. This is in fact confirmed in Isaiah 63: 8 as follows: ***‘For He (YHVH) said,” Surely, they are My people, Sons who will not deal falsely.” So He became their Savior.’***

During His ministry on earth Yahshua continued to make claims, proving that He is in fact our Elohim. In John 5: 21 He said: ***“For just as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, even so the Son gives life to whom He wishes.”*** We know that only YHVH our Elohim, the Creator of the universe could do this. We also know that only YHVH our Elohim can forgive sins, yet in Mark 2: 5 Yahshua said: ***“My son your sins are forgiven.”*** Only YHVH our Elohim is in charge of the universe, yet in Matthew 28: 18 Yahshua says: ***“All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth.”*** Yahshua was clearly more than a mere man, He was YHVH manifested in the flesh.

This is totally in agreement with prophesy that we read about Yahshua’s birth in Isaiah 7: 14 as follows: ***“Therefore YHVH Himself will give you a sign; Behold a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel.”*** The name Immanuel means Elohim with us. To further substantiate this we read in John 1: 1 – 3 & 14 as follows: ***“In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. He was in the beginning with Elohim. All things came into being by Him, and apart from***

***Him nothing came into being that has come into being.”
“And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we
beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the
Father, full of grace and truth.”***

Let us examine to see if indeed this can be proven elsewhere in the Scriptures. Let us go to the very beginning in Genesis 1: 1 where we read: ***“In the beginning Elohim created the heavens and the earth.”*** We do not see the ‘Word’ here, or do we? It is not evident in English or any other language for that matter, but in the Hebrew it reads as follows:

בראית ברא אלהים את השמים ואת הארץ

Transliterated this reads: Bereshith Barah Elohim Aleph Tav HaShamim vav Aleph Tav HaArets. Notice here are two extra words in Hebrew which we do not see in any other language. These two words are: את & ואת

Transliterated these two words are Aleph Tav, vav Aleph Tav or in English simply the beginning and concluding letters of the Alphabet. In Greek we see The Scriptures use the words Alpha and Omega. The beginning and end letters of the alphabet or simply put the entire alphabet. We know that we use the Alphabet to read and write - but write what? Yes, we use the alphabet to write words. We know that the Scriptures is also known as the word of Elohim. In addition we know that YHVH our Elohim created the universe by saying. In verse 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 11, 14, 20, 24, 26 and 29 of Genesis 1, we see a record of creation, YHVH created by saying – or as it is put in English “And Elohim said.” YHVH said words and whatever He said, came to existence. In Psalm 33: 3 we read: ***“By the word of YHVH the heavens were made.”***

This gets us back to John 1: 1, confirming that the Alphabet (or Aleph Tav) was there in the beginning creating the universe. In fact to this day Yahshua, who is the manifestation of YHVH, is ensuring that the law of gravity remains in force, to uphold all things. We read this in Hebrews 1: 3 as follows: ***And He is the***

radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature, and upholds all things by the word of His power.

Since we have now touched on the idea of 'exact representation' and/or 'manifestation', let us make sure that we fully appreciate what the Scriptures wants us to know by this concept. In Genesis 1: 27 we read: ***“And Elohim created man in his own image, in the image of Elohim He created him; male and female He created them.”*** In Colossians 1: 15 we read: ***“And He (Yahshua) is the image of the invisible Elohim, the first-born (Greek = *protokos* meaning brought forth) of all creation.”*** From this we can deduce that we look like Yahshua the one who was brought forth from the bosom of Elohim. A second witness to Yahshua being the image of Elohim may be read in 2 Corinthians 4: 4 as follows: ***“in whose case the god of this world (Satan) has blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that they might not see the light of the gospel of the glory of Messiah, who is the image of Elohim.”***

YHVH has no form according to Deuteronomy 4: 12 ***“Then YHVH spoke to you from the midst of the fire; you heard the sound of words, but you saw no form – only a voice.”*** In addition we know that YHVH is infinite according to 1 Kings 8: 27 ***“But will Elohim dwell on the earth? Behold, heaven and the highest heaven cannot contain Thee, how much less this house which I have built!”*** It is for this reason that man's mind cannot understand YHVH, as He cannot be defined nor can He be bordered. 1Timothy 1: 17 confirm these facts as follows: ***“now to the King eternal immortal, invisible, the only Elohim be honor and glory forever and ever, Amein.”*** So it is important to realize that as per John 1: 18 ***“No man has seen Elohim at any time; the only begotten Elohim who is in the bosom of the Father, He has explained Him.”*** YHVH became a man in Yahshua so that we may relate to and understand HIM.

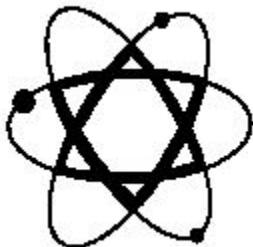
In 1 John 1: 1 – 2 John says: ***“What was from the beginning, what we have heard, what we have seen with our eyes, what we beheld and our hands handled, concerning the Word of Life- and the life was manifested and we have seen and bear***

witness and proclaim to you the eternal life, which was with the Father and was manifested to us-.” In Colossians 1: 24 - 27 Rav Shaul confirms this: **“Now I rejoice in my suffering for your sake, and in my flesh I do my share on behalf of His body (which is the ecclesia) in filling up that which is lacking in Messiah’s affiliations. Of this ecclesia I was made a minister according to the stewardship from Elohim bestowed on me for your benefit, that I might fully carry out the word of Elohim, that is the mystery which has been hidden from the past ages and generations; but has now been manifested to His saints, to whom Elohim willed to make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles, which is Messiah in you, the hope of glory.”** The last Scripture is essentially telling us that Yahshua is the manifestation of the word of Elohim and now that we understand the mystery, Messiah is our hope of glory or our hope for eternal life².

² PETER PROPHESED THE POWER OF ATOMS – from the book *Messiah* by Moore: The phrase “stored with fire” illustrates that Peter, although not knowledgeable himself about the atom, accurately described the immense power stored within it, which when split, emits much heat and fire, thus causing the disintegration of matter. Peter continues: “But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up. Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness. Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat? Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness” (II Pet. 3:10-13 KJV).

Here, in what God inspired Peter to reveal to us, we have the explanation of how God creates room for us to live in His New Earth! It is interesting to note that we could not have clearly understood these verses until the age of Einstein, nearly 2000 years after they were inscribed on papyrus. Through our modern understanding of nuclear physics, we can grasp something of God’s description to Peter of the immense heat and fire released when He explodes every atom. Furthermore, we now know Einstein was not the first to realize the power of the atom. We see it was also encoded by God in the Holy Scriptures long ago.

We have seen a number of times from the book of Isaiah that Elohim is our Savior. Let us now turn to the new covenant to confirm that indeed Elohim is our Savior. In Titus 2: 13 Rav Shaul states: **“looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of the glory of our great Elohim and Savior Messiah Yahshua.”** If we compare this Scripture with Isaiah 45: 15, which we read before, we realize that either Yahshua is a phony or He is in fact YHVH our Elohim. The apostle Peter (Kepha) agrees with Rav Shaul in 2 Peter 1: 1 **“Simon Peter, a**



Since the Godhead is three in one, we present a diagram of an atom with three electrons in orbit around its nucleus, which contains protons and neutrons. Notice that the inner design forms the six-pointed Star of David. Notice also that the Star of David is composed of a triangle pointing up toward God, and another pointing down toward man. A triangle has three sides, illustrating man's complete essence of: 1. mind; 2. body; 3. spirit; which were made in God's image. God is also one, yet three at the same time (Gen. 1:26). In the Old Testament, Isaiah 48:16 relates, in God's own words: "Come ye near unto me, hear ye this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; from the time that it was, there am I: and now the Lord God [Father], and his Spirit ["Holy Spirit," in Hebrew, Rauch ha Kodesh], hath sent me [Messiah]" (KJV; [] mine). Remember, the Messiah, who is said to be both man and God, would comprise both of these triangles which are interlocked in the Star of David ("shield of David" in Hebrew). Megan David A, David's true shield, was Messiah. The very phrase, "Son of David," is in itself, a Messianic idiom. The Messiah created every atom. "He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not" (John 1:10 KJV). Therefore, as you can see, His emblem is inscribed in this molecular diagram designed by twentieth century science! We also believe He will recreate all matter in the new universe (Rev. 21)!

bond-servant and apostle of Yahshua Messiah, to those who have received a faith of the same kind as ours, by the righteousness of our Elohim and Savior, Yahshua Messiah.

In both these instances Yahshua is actually referred to as Elohim.

We are commanded in Exodus chapter 20 verses 2 & 3 being the first commandment, not to have any other Elohim, before or besides YHVH our Elohim. However, we see in Matthew 14: 33 that Yahshua was actually worshipped whilst He was on earth: ***‘And those who were in the boat worshiped Him, saying, “You are certainly Elohim’s Son!”*** In John 20: 27 & 28 we read one more place where Yahshua was actually worshipped as being YHVH: ***‘Then He said to Thomas, “Reach here your finger, and see My hands; and reach here your hand, and put it into My side; and be not unbelieving, but believing, “Thomas answered and said to Him, “My Master and my Elohim!”*** In an attempt to deny that Yahshua was worshipped as Elohim, the Jehovah’s Witnesses in their own translated version of the Scriptures, says that Thomas said “My Master” and looking up to the heavens, continued saying “My Elohim.” We know that the Jehovah’s Witnesses believe that Yahshua was only an angel and not YHVH himself, so it is to be expected that they cannot allow this truth to be in their Scriptures.

There are a few more places where Yahshua was worshipped, indicating His deity. We may read about these in Matthew 2: 11; 28: 9 and 17. In addition we read in Hebrews 13: 8 that Yahshua is the same yesterday and today, yes and forever. Exactly the same with Elohim as we read in Malachi 3: 6: ***“For I am YHVH, I change not.”***

If you are not confused yet, let us look at the concept of YHVH being the right hand and holy arm of YHVH.

Especially notice that YHVH became Israel’s salvation because of the power of His right hand and outstretched arm. In Exodus 15: 2 & 6 we read: ***“YHVH is my strength and song, And He has become my salvation; This is my Elohim, and I will***

praise Him; My father's Elohim and I will extol Him." "Thy right hand O YHVH, is majestic in power, Thy right hand, O YHVH shatters the enemy." The Psalmist also proclaimed about the power of the arm of YHVH to save, in Psalm 44: 1- 3: "O Elohim we have heard with our ears, Our fathers have told us, The work that Thou didst in their days, In the days of old. Thou with Thine own hand didst drive out the nations; Then Thou didst plant them; Thou didst afflict the peoples, Then Thou didst spread them abroad. For by their own sword they did not possess the land; And their own arm did not save them; But Thy right hand, and Thine arm, and the light of Thy presence, For Thou didst favor them."

He also proclaims in Psalm 98: 1 - 3: ***"O sing to YHVH a new song, For He has done wonderful things, His right hand, and His holy arm, have gained victory for Him. YHVH has made known His salvation; He has revealed His righteousness in the sight of the nations. He has remembered His lovingkindness and His faithfulness to the house of Israel; All the ends of the earth have seen the salvation of our Elohim."***

Again, the right hand and holy arm of YHVH are associated with salvation. The prophet Isaiah is also inspired to proclaim the association of the arm of YHVH with salvation in Isaiah 33: 2: ***"O YHVH, be gracious unto us; we have waited for Thee. Be Thou their strength (arm) every morning. Our Salvation also in the time of distress."***

Rav Shaul reveals that YHVH has purposely blinded Israel in Romans 11: 7, 8, 25 -27: ***"What then? That which Israel is seeking for, it has not obtained, but those who were chosen obtained it, and the rest were hardened; just as it is written, "Elohim gave them a spirit of stupor, Eyes to see not and ears to hear not, Down to this very day." "For I do not want you, brethren, to be uninformed of this mystery, lest you be wise in your own estimation, that a partial hardening has happened to Israel until the fullness of the Gentiles have***

come in; and thus all Israel will be saved just as it is written, " The Deliverer will come from Zion, He will remove ungodliness from Jacob." "And This is My covenant with Them, When I take away their sins."

We have already seen in Isaiah 45: 15 that YHVH hides Himself from His people. He also hides the fact that He personally, is their Savior! It is the right hand and arm of YHVH that brings Salvation. How can we know this arm? Only if we allow the Holy Spirit to guide us through His word, the Scriptures, and believe what we read! Isaiah declares in chapter 53: 1 ***"Who hath believed our message? And to whom is the Arm of YHVH revealed?"***

Let's also read from verse 2 - 12 and compare it with the writings of the New Testament: ***"For He grew up before HIM like a tender shoot, And like a root out of parched ground; He has no stately form or majesty That we should look upon Him, Nor appearance that we should be attracted to Him. He was despised and forsaken of men, A man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; And like one from whom men hide their face, He was despised, and we did not esteem Him. Surely our griefs He Himself bore. And our sorrows He carried; Yet we ourselves esteemed Him stricken, Smitten of Elohim and afflicted. But He was pierced through for our transgressions. He was crushed for our iniquities; The chastening for our wellbeing fell upon Him, And by His scourging we are healed. All of us like sheep have gone astray, Each one of us has turned his own way; But YHVH has caused the iniquity of us all To fall on Him. He was oppressed and He was afflicted, Yet He did not open His mouth; Like a lamb that is led to slaughter, And a sheep that is silent before its shearers, So He did not open His mouth. By oppression and judgment He was taken away; And as for His generation, who considered That He was, cut off out of the land of the living, For the transgression of my people to whom the stroke was due? His grave was assigned with wicked men, Yet He was with the rich man in His death,***

Because He had done no violence, Nor was there any deceit in His mouth. But YHVH was pleased To crush Him, putting Him to grief; If He would render Himself as a guilt offering, He will see His offspring, He will prolong His days, And the good pleasure of YHVH will prosper in His hand. As a result of the anguish of His soul, He will see it and be satisfied; By His knowledge the Righteous One, My Servant, will justify the many, As He will bear their iniquities. Therefore, I will allot Him a portion with the great, And He will divide the booty with the strong; Because He poured out Himself to death, And was numbered with the transgressors; Yet He Himself bore the sin of many, And interceded for the transgressors."

The "Arm of YHVH" is revealed. The "Arm of YHVH" is the One Who became salvation to Israel in the day when Israel was delivered out of Egypt. The "Arm of YHVH" is the One Who delivered David from all of His trials and problems. The "Arm of YHVH" is the Savior of Israel, the salvation of all peoples, Yahshua the Messiah of Nazareth. In Isaiah 41: 14 YHVH proclaims that He is Israel's Redeemer: ***"Do not fear, you worm Jacob, you men of Israel; I will help you, declares YHVH, and your Redeemer is the Holy One of Israel."*** In Isaiah 44: 6 YHVH says: ***"Thus says YHVH the King of Israel And his Redeemer YHVH of hosts; 'I am the first, and I am the last, And there is no Elohim besides Me."*** In Isaiah 47: 4 He says: ***"Our Redeemer, YHVH of hosts is His name, the Holy One of Israel."*** In Isaiah 48: 17: ***"Thus says YHVH, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; 'I am YHVH your Elohim who teaches you thee to profit, Who leads you in the way that you should go.'" In Isaiah 60: 16 He says: "You will also suck the milk of nations, And will suck the breast of kings; Then you will know that I YHVH, am your Savior, And your Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob."*** In Jeremiah 50: 33 -34 He says: ***"Thus says YHVH of host, "The sons of Israel are oppressed, And the sons of Judah as well; And all who took them captive have held them fast, They have refused to let them go. Their Redeemer is strong, YHVH of hosts is His name; He will***

vigorously plead their case, So that He may bring rest to the earth, But turmoil to the inhabitants of Babylon."

According to the New Testament, Yahshua is the One Who redeems us. In Galatians 4: 4 & 5 we read: ***"But when the fullness of the time was come, Elohim sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born under law, In order that He might redeem those that were under law, that we might receive the adoption of sons,"*** In Titus 2: 11- 14 we read: ***"For the grace of Elohim has appeared, bringing salvation to all men, instructing us to deny ungodliness and worldly desires and to live sensibly, righteously and godly in the present age, looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of the glory of our great Elohim and Savior Messiah Yahshua; who gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from every lawless deed and purify for Himself a people for His own possession, zealous for good deeds."***

Redemption comes through Yahshua's poured out blood as per Ephesians 1: 3 – 7: ***"Blessed be the Elohim and FATHER of our Master Yahshua the Messiah Who has blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in the Messiah, just as He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and blameless before Him in love. He predestined us to adoption as sons through Yahshua Messiah to Himself, according to the kind intention of His will, to the praise of the glory of His grace, which He freely bestowed on us in the Beloved. In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace,"*** Also see Colossians 1: 3 and 12 – 14

In Hebrews 9: 11 - 15 we read: ***"But when Messiah appeared as high priest of good things to come, He entered through the greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of the creation; and not through the blood of goats and calves, but through His own blood, He entered the holy place once for all, having obtained***

eternal redemption. For the blood of goats and bulls and the ashes of a heifer sprinkling those who have been defiled, sanctify for the cleansing of the flesh, how much more will be blood of Messiah, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without blemish to Elohim, cleans your conscience from dead works to serve the Living Elohim? And for this reason He is the mediator of a new covenant, in order that since a death has taken place for the redemption of the transgressions that were committed under the first covenant, those who have been called may receive the promise of eternal inheritance.”

We have seen that YHVH proclaimed that He was Israel's Elohim, Savior and Redeemer. Yet, the New Testament reveals that Yahshua is the Savior and Redeemer. YHVH said that there was no Elohim or Savior beside Him. Since the New Testament presents Yahshua as Savior and Redeemer while the Old Testament presents YHVH as Savior and Redeemer, then: Who is Yahshua? Either He is an imposter or He is YHVH our Elohim.

Chapter 3: Are we teaching truth?

We are a very small congregation here in Port Elizabeth. However, we also send papers containing our Sabbath sermons and or sermonettes, to like-minded believers in Summerstrand, Gauteng, Cape Town, George, Plettenberg Bay, Namibia and even the USA, on a fairly regular basis. At times some amongst these like-minded believers are questioned by other Nazarene/Messianic believers, putting doubt in their minds about the tenets of our Nazarene Jewish faith.³

Yes, brethren we need to question our beliefs and make certain that we do not mislead anyone. I therefore pray with all my heart, that those who are causing our people to doubt their beliefs, are very certain about their facts and are able to prove their position, without any doubt, or that they are blinded or deceived themselves, and do not intend to mislead our people willfully.

In Matthew 18: 6 - 7 Yahshua said: ***“but whoever causes one of these little ones who believe in me to stumble, it is better for him that a heavy millstone be hung around his neck, and that he be drowned in the depth of the sea. Woe to the world because of its stumbling blocks! For it is in-avoidable that stumbling blocks come; but woe to that man through whom the stumbling block comes!”*** Yes, brethren this is talking about people who put stumbling blocks in the way of children, such as the belief in Santa Clause and the Easter Bunny, but it also refers to people who make new believers in Yahshua the Messiah doubt; when the Sabbath day begins; whether Yahshua partook of the last Passover before He was impaled; and whether we are keeping the correct calendar, etc, etc.

³ We know that the initial believers in Yahshua the Messiah were identified as the Jewish sect of the Nazarenes, according to Acts 24: 5 and 14. Rav Shaul (Paul) was identified as the ring-leader of the Nazarenes. However, since not all of us are Jews by birth, we are also known as Nazarene Israel, due to the law of inheritance recorded in Galatians 3: 26 to Galatians 4: 31 and Galatians 6: 16.

If you have read my recent book entitled: **What is our destiny?** (sent free of charge to those who requested a copy – the offer is still standing, but we are preparing to print the second edition shortly), you will recall the statement that Satan was perfect in all his ways prior to his rebellion (quoted from Ezekiel 28: 12 – 15). Satan is a spirit being; he sinned with full knowledge and can therefore not repent. Being a spirit being Satan cannot die. In Luke 20: 36 Yahshua said that angels cannot die and Satan being a fallen angel can therefore also not die. The Scriptures refer to angels as stars (see Revelation 1: 20). When Satan and his angels sinned we read in Revelation 12: 9 that he, who deceives the whole world; was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him. Satan and his angels sinned and they are now known as fallen angels (demons) or wandering stars as may be seen in Jude 13 ***“wild waves of the sea, casting up their own shame like foam, wondering stars, for whom the black darkness has been reserved forever.”*** Satan and his demons will be tormented day and night forever. Their torment will essentially be the fact of knowing what they’ve had before their rebellion against the Most High, and what they lost. A second witness to the fact that Satan will be tormented forever may be found in Revelation 20: 10, where we see that the devil that deceived them (mankind) was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone and will be tormented day and night forever and ever⁴.

As pointed out Satan sinned with all knowledge, we (mankind) do not have all knowledge – we are human and can misunderstand, and in addition we could also be partly blinded. I therefore hope and pray that none of us are willfully putting stumbling blocks in the way of new believers – to make them doubt the tenets of our faith. Having covered the many calendar questions raised in my book, I want to consider two other questions which are regularly raised to confuse our people – be it willfully or not. These two questions are:

⁴ *We know that YHVH our Elohim is Almighty and that He could create fire that will even consume spirit beings, however, in this case it is not a matter of what is possible for Him, but what His will is.*

1. When is the Sabbath Day of YHVH our Elohim? ; and
2. Did Yahshua partake of the last Passover, before His impalement?

Let us start with question 1 (one) and make sure that we get rid of all our doubts regarding this important question.

In Exodus 20: 8 - 11 YHWH commands: ***“Remember the Sabbath day to keep it Set-apart. Six days you shall labor and do all your work, but the seventh day is the Sabbath of YHVH thy Elohim:”*** Yahshua did not come to abolish the law and said so in Matt 5: 17 & 18: ***“Do not think that I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I did not come to abolish but to fulfill (to make it more binding). For truly, I say to you, till heaven and the earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass away from the Law; until all is accomplished.”***

Yahshua is the same yesterday, today and tomorrow, according to Heb.13: 8. He did not change His mind after His impalement. He laid down his life for His people and became a sacrifice for our past lawlessness. That was the only part of the law that He effectively fulfilled, doing away with the requirement to sacrifice the blood of animals every time we transgress the law. The law of clean and unclean food given in Leviticus 11 is still in effect. The law prohibiting incest is still intact. The law of not eating fat or blood is still applicable. All the sexual laws are still in force and so is the Sabbath still in effect today, as may be read in Hebrews 4: 4, 9: ***‘For He has thus said somewhere concerning the seventh day, “And Elohim Rested On The Seventh Day From All His Works.” There remains therefore a Sabbath rest for the people of Elohim.’***

YHVH our Elohim is very specific about which day we are to keep. He does not merely instruct us to keep one day in seven, or A Sabbath day. We are clearly told to keep THE Seventh Day. The question is: Is keeping the Seventh day an impossible request that YHVH is asking of us? Can we know which day is the seventh day after all the past centuries? How can we be

certain that Saturday is the seventh day, designated by YHVH as Set-apart?

If we look at history, we see evidence about the observance of the Sabbath by faithful Jews, who kept the Sabbath without missing from one generation to the next. Even though we know from The Scriptures that the Sabbath is not for Jews only (see Leviticus 23: 2 – YHVH says that these Set-apart days, including the Sabbath are His appointed times), the Orthodox Jews are a very good source for discovering which day is the seventh day from a historical perspective. The Orthodox Jews have been keeping the seventh day Sabbath from the time that YHVH gave it to them at Mount Sinai, until this very day. They have kept the Sabbath day, week after week and generation after generation, until this very day.

Christians and those of us who came from Christianity are aware of at least one calendar change in the past, that could effect the days that we are keeping today. Some assume that one cannot for certain say that the Sabbath remains on the seventh day. However, Let us examine the evidence before we reach the wrong conclusion.

The fact of the matter is that there was only one calendar change to effect the dates as we know them today. This happened in October 1582. Pope Gregory XIII reformed the Julian calendar by **removing** 10 days. By this change he intended to synchronize the calendar with the seasons, planets and stars. The change effected only the **dates of the month and not the order of the days of the week.** Below is an example of how this was done:

October 1582

SUN	MON	TUES	WED	THUR	FRI	SAT
1	2	3	4	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31

(From the book – “Seven Mysteries Solved” Volume 2)

After the calendar change by Pope Gregory XIII, Sunday was still followed by Monday, etc. The weekdays continued in progression in the same way, except for the fact that they carried new labels.

In addition we see from Mark 16: 1 - 2 that Mark still referred to Saturday (the seventh day) as the Sabbath and not Sunday, after Yahshua's impalement: ***“And when the Sabbath was over, Mary Magdalene, and Mary the Mother of James, and Salome, bought spices, that they might come and anoint Him. And very early on the first day of the week (Sunday), they came to the tomb when the sun had risen.”***

Most of us know that Saturday is the Sabbath and not Sunday, which is clearly already the 1st day of the next week. So there is no argument here. However, when does the Sabbath day begin and when does it end? We have seen that according to the way we calculate time today, that a day starts and ends at midnight. However, we are fully aware of the fact that this was not always so, and that scripturally time is calculated differently.

To respond to the question concerning at what time the Sabbath day begins and ends; let us go right to the beginning in Genesis. In verse 5 of Genesis 1 we see: ***“And Elohim called the light day, and the darkness He called night. And there was evening and there was morning, one day.”*** We see here that the 1st day consisted of a dark or evening part as well as a light or day part. In the same way the second, third, fourth, fifth and sixth days consisted of an evening part and a day part as is recorded for us in Genesis 1: 8, 13, 19, 23, and 31. There is no reason to think that the seventh day was any different, i.e. it consisted of an evening (or dark) part and a day (or light) part. So we may therefore safely assume that the Sabbath starts at sunset on a Friday (the sixth day) evening to sunset on a Saturday (the seventh day) evening. However, we know that the proponents of the day time Sabbath will not be satisfied with this answer alone.

Let us therefore continue in Leviticus 23: 27 where we read: ***“On exactly the tenth day of the seventh month is the Day of Atonement; it shall be a Set-apart convocation for you, and you shall humble your souls and present an offering by fire to YHVH.”*** To find out when the 10th day of the seventh month begins, we read in verse 32, as follows: ***“It is to be a Sabbath of complete rest to you, and you shall humble your souls; on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening until evening you shall keep your Sabbath.”*** So clearly here we see that the tenth day of the month commences at the evening of the ninth day and continues for 24 hours until the evening of the tenth day. It is at this point then fairly safe to say that any day starts in the evening, when the sun goes down (twilight) until the next evening when the sun goes down. This should be considered a second witness that the Sabbath as any other day starts with an evening or dark part followed by a light or day part. In addition in Jeremiah 33: 20 – 22 we read: ***“Thus says YHVH, ‘If you can break My covenant for the day, and My covenant for the night, so that day and night will not be at their appointed time, then My covenant may also be broken with David My servant that he shall not have a son to reign on his throne, and with the Levitical priests, My ministers. ‘As the host of heaven cannot be counted, and the sand of the sea cannot be measured, so I will multiply the descendants of David My servant and the Levites who minister to Me.’”***

We also see in The Scriptures that even a new month, i.e. the first day of any month starts the evening after the new moon (which is essentially a concealed moon). The moon is renewed immediately after the shadow of the earth, between the sun and the moon, covers the moon and commences towards renewal. (Not all agree with this point as well, but I am not discussing this here, as it may be seen in the book that I mentioned earlier). If you compare a Gregorian calendar which shows the positions of the moon, with a Jewish calendar (obtainable from the local Rabbi cal synagogue), you will notice that according to the Jewish calendar, the Rosh Chodesh or the New Month is always the next evening after the Gregorian calendar shows the New Moon - which is in essence a dark moon (a black dot) or no

moon. Now if the first day of the month start at evening, then surely the seventh day will also start at evening.

We see according to the Jewish calendar that Rosh Chodesh is one day during some months and two days during other months. This is totally in line with the Scriptures. In 1 Samuel 20 verse 5, 27 and 34 we read: ***'So David said to Jonathan, "Behold tomorrow is the new moon, and I ought to sit down to eat with the king, But let me go, that I may hide myself in the field until the third evening. (why the 3rd evening – because as we will see in the next quoted part, that the new moon lasted two days for that particular month)." 'And it came about the next day, the second day of the new moon, that David's place was empty; so Saul said to Jonathan his son, "Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal, either yesterday or today?" 'Then Jonathan arose from the table in fierce anger, and did not eat food on the second day of the new moon, for he was grieved over David because his father had dishonored him.'***

Now if at this point the proponents of the day time Sabbath still say No! No! No! I would like to go to Nehemiah 13: 19 where it reads: ***"And it came about that just as it grew dark at the gates of Jerusalem before the Sabbath, I commanded that the doors should be shut and that they should not open them until after the Sabbath. Then I stationed some of my servants, at the gates that no load should enter on the Sabbath day.*** We see that it grew dark immediately before the Sabbath – that means that the Sabbath day like any other day starts with a dark or evening part, which is followed by a light or day part.

The Scriptures tell us that we need two or three witnesses to prove a point. If this is not enough for those who believe differently, then nothing will satisfy them.

Now let us go to the question 2, i.e. Did Yahshua partake of the last Passover, before His impalement?

To commence with, I put it to you: that if Yahshua did not partake of the Passover before He died, He would have died for His own sin and you and I would be most miserable as the death penalty would still hang over our heads.

How can I say that? Am I the judge of the world? No, I am not, but I am only telling you what Torah teaches in this regard. Let's turn to the Torah in Numbers 9: 2 & 3 which reads as follows: ***“Now let the sons of Israel observe the Passover at its appointed time. “On the fourteenth day of this month at twilight, you shall observe it at its appointed time; you shall observe it according to all its statutes and according to all its ordinances.”*** From verse 4 on, it explains that if for some reason any of the children of Israel could not observe the Passover at the appointed time, because of the fact that such a person is on a journey or is unclean, because he or she came in touch with a dead person (i.e. a family member passed away and he or she had to bury the family member), such a person may partake of a second Passover, which is a month later on the fourteenth day of the second month at twilight. In verse 13 of Numbers 9 we read as follows: ***“But the man who is clean and is not on a journey, and yet he neglects to observe the Passover, that person shall then be cut off from his people, for he did not present the offering of YHVH at its appointed time. That man shall bear his sin.”*** Now at this point you might object profusely, saying that Yahshua could not have taken the Passover, as the Passover of the Jews only occurred the next evening after His death, on the evening of the fifteenth of Aviv, or for those who interprets twilight or ‘between the two evenings’ (as some versions of The Scriptures translates it), to mean ‘the next evening’, i.e. the evening of the first day of unleavened bread.

The original Passover was kept on the fourteenth day of the first month at twilight. When is twilight? Some insist that twilight or ‘between the two evenings’, mean the next afternoon or evening. Then they say the Passover is therefore kept at the end of the fourteenth. From The Scriptures we see that twilight simply means in the evening. Turn to the first part of Exodus 16: 8,

where it reads: ***'And Moses said, "This will happen when YHVH gives you meat to eat in the evening, and bread to the full in the morning;*** In verses 12 & 13 of Exodus 16, we read: ***" I have heard the grumblings of the sons of Israel; speak to them, saying 'At twilight you shall eat meat, and in the morning you shall be filled with bread; and you shall know that I am YHVH your Elohim'"*** So it came about at evening (the beginning of the new day) ***that the quails came up and covered the camp, and in the morning there was a layer of dew around the camp.***' Twilight does not mean the next evening; it is simply at the start of the day in the evening.

According to Deuteronomy 16: 1 the Israelites left Egypt by night. In Numbers 28: 16 & 17 we read: ***'Then on the fourteenth of the first month shall be Elohim's Passover. And on the fifteenth of this month shall be a feast, unleavened bread shall be eaten seven days.'*** According to the last part of Exodus 12: 22, the Israelites were not permitted to leave their houses during the night of the fourteenth until the morning. If they left during the night of the Passover, they would have been disobedient to YHVH. Also in Exodus 12 verse 29 we read: ***"Now it came about at midnight that YHVH struck all the first-born in the land of Egypt, from the first-born of Pharaoh who sat on his throne to the first-born of the captive who was in the dungeon, and all the first-born of cattle."*** So they could not have left during the night of the Passover, but yes they did leave during the next night, in the full moon to help them on their journey. A second witness to this may be found in Joshua 5: 10 and 11 as follows: ***"While the sons of Israel camped at Gilgal, they observed the Passover on the evening of the fourteenth day of the month on the desert plains of Jericho. And on the day after the Passover, on the very day they ate some of the produce of the land, unleavened cakes and parched grain."***

In Genesis 49: 10 we read that ruler ship (as far as religious matters are concerned) will remain with Judah, until Yahshua comes to rule. Whilst Yahshua's first advent was to bring Salvation to all mankind, His second advent is to come and rule

the world from Jerusalem. We know that Yahshua corrected the occurrence of the Passover, his reason for the 1st advent, to die as our Passover lamb, when He kept the Passover a whole 24 hours before the Jews of His day did – i.e. at sunset on the 14th of Aviv. That was the only adjustment that He made to the annual Set-apart Day cycle at that time – He kept the other Set-apart days with the Jews of His day. He will if necessary also correct any other problems regarding the Hebrew calendar, when He returns to rule. In fact our Jewish brothers believe that Shiloh will fix any problems with the current calendar, when He comes.

We observe the Passover at twilight on the fourteenth day of the first month of the year as commanded in Leviticus 23: 5 ***"In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month at twilight is Elohim's Passover."*** As explained Yahshua kept the Passover 24 hours prior to the time that the Jews of His day and the Jews of today are doing. We read about this in 1 Corinthians 11: 23 – 26 ***"For I received from the Master that which I also delivered to you: that the Master Yahshua in the night in which He was delivered up took bread, and having given thanks, He broke it and said, 'Take eat, this is My body which is broken for you; do this in remembrance of Me.' In the same way also the cup, after supper, saying, 'This cup is the renewed covenant in My blood, As often as you drink it, do this in remembrance of Me.' For as often as you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the death of the Master until He comes."***

Yahshua kept the Passover with His disciples during the night that He was betrayed, at twilight on the fourteenth of Aviv as the 13th of Aviv came to a close. We know that our Jewish brothers kept the Passover the next day after Yahshua was Impaled and already in His grave. We keep the Passover as a memorial to Yahshua's death, one of the traditions in which we follow Rav Shaul, as He followed Messiah – see 1 Corinthians 11: 1, 2 and 23.

In Mark 14: 13 & 14 we read: ***"And He sent two of His disciples and said to them, 'Go into the city, and a man will meet you***

carrying a pitcher of water; follow him; and wherever he enters, say to the owner of the house, 'The Teacher says, "Where is my guest room in which I may eat the Passover with My disciples?"' From this it is clear that Yahshua fully intended to eat the Passover with His disciples. In verse 16 of Mark 14, we also see that they prepared the Passover. In verse 18 of Mark 14, we see that Yahshua ate the Passover when he said: ***"Truly I say to you that one of you will betray Me – one who is eating with Me."***

In verse 23 of Mark 14 we read: ***'And when He had taken a cup, and given thanks, He gave it to them; and they all drank from it.'*** Brethren this was the Passover that Yahshua was partaking of and it was 24 hours prior to the Passover of the Jews. If it was the Passover, then I say to you again, if He did not partake of it, then we are all still in our sin, as we read in the last part of Numbers 9: 13 ***"That man shall bear his sin."***

I believe that we must be much more careful when teaching little ones (both children and new members in our community), as it warns in Matthew 18: 6 ***"but whoever causes one of these little ones who believe in me to stumble, it is better for him that a heavy millstone be hung around his neck, and that he be drowned in the depth of the sea."***

Chapter 4: Our covenant relationship with YHVH our Elohim.

We are in a covenant relationship with YHVH – we belong to no religious group or church as such. We refrain from saying that we are of Peter or we are of Paul – as they did not die for our sins. We rather say that we belong to Messiah Yahshua – as He died for our sins. Whose rules do we follow? Do we follow the rules of some church or leader, or do we follow the rules of Yahshua?

Our aim is to fulfill our part of the covenant with YHVH, by trying to the best of our ability, to keep His covenant, which is according to Deuteronomy 4: 13 the ten commandments: ***“So He declared to you His covenant which He commanded you to perform, that is, the ten commandments; and He wrote them on two tablets of stone.”*** YHVH through Isaiah in Chapter 56 verse 6 ensures us that despite our heritage, if we love His name, keep from profaning the Sabbath, and hold fast His covenant; He will bring us into His Set-apart Mountain – which means His Kingdom.

We know that there are churches that reason away the Oneness of Elohim. Some hold that there is a trinity and others have different opinions. We who believe in Yahshua Who according to Isaiah 7: 14, was to be called Immanuel – meaning Elohim with us, know that He said in Matthew 5: 17 – 19 that He did not come to do away with the Law of YHVH, but to make it more binding. He added that whosoever shall teach people to annul one of the least of these commandments shall be called least in the Kingdom of heaven. Most of the Christian and other churches in the world, as we know, have annulled the Sabbath as well as the first (the Oneness of Elohim) and third commandments (not to misuse, but to give honor to the name of YHVH).

We who follow Yahshua know that when He was asked which is the foremost of all commandments, He answered in Mark 12: 29 as follows: ***“The foremost is, ‘Hear O Israel! YHVH our Elohim YHVH is ONE; And you shall love YHVH your Elohim with all***

your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind, and with all your strength.” This is in total agreement with Deuteronomy 4: 35, which paraphrased says: YHVH is One and there is no one besides Him.

Do we still try and reason away the Oneness of Elohim, as some do, by stating that we need both the Father and the Son and that YHVH is two Elohim or a twinity. This is partly true –Yes, we do need both the Father and the son, as it says in 2 John 9 “***Anyone who goes too far and does not abide in the teaching of Messiah, does not have Elohim; the one who abides in the teaching, he has both the Father and the Son.***” We abide in Yahshua’s teaching and remember how he said in John 10: 30 “***I and the Father are one.***” We can therefore no longer be part of the churches of the world, who deny the Name of YHVH our Elohim, who profanes the Sabbath and who do not keep some or all of the first four of the Ten Commandments. We need to come out of the churches of the world. The churches of the world nullify many of the teachings of Elohim, as given in the first five books of The Scriptures.

They have done away with the Feast Days of YHVH which are shadows of what is to come. These Feast Days are rehearsals of YHVH our Elohim’s plan of Salvation for all mankind. Yes, the ideal is to keep these days in Jerusalem, but as we know it is not always possible for all to go to Jerusalem at this time. The point is that we are commanded to keep these rehearsals so that we are always mindful of the coming Kingdom of Elohim and His plan of Salvation for all mankind.

We must not be boastful because we are at this time the only ones keeping the Feast Days of YHVH and His Torah. We are keeping it because He has called us out of the world to follow Him as first fruits. We read about this in James 1: 18 as follows: “***In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were the first fruits among His creature.***” In addition in 1 Corinthians 1: 26 – 29 we read: “***For consider your calling, brethren, that there were not many wise according to the flesh, not many mighty, not***

many noble; but Elohim has chosen the foolish things of the world to shame the wise, and Elohim has chosen the weak things of the world to shame the things which are strong, and the base things of the world and the despised, Elohim has chosen, the things that are not, that He might nullify the things that are, that no man should boast before Elohim.”

Brethren, we need to be careful that we do not try to reason away the commandments that we are not keeping at this time. Perhaps we are not keeping them, because we do not know about them, or perhaps how to keep them at this time. However, we should be very careful to like the churches in the world reason away the commandments that we are not keeping, as this could cause us to be called least in the Kingdom of heaven.

Consider for example Deuteronomy 6: 4 - 9. We believe in the Oneness of Elohim; we Love YHVH with our whole heart, soul and might, but do we teach our children to do that? Do we bind them on our foreheads and our hands? Perhaps not, as we do not know how to do it, at this stage? Or do we reason this one away? Do we write them on our doorposts? Yes we write them in the Mezuzahs which we put on our doorpost.

Let us get out of the religions of the world, the things or people who control our hearts – which we know in the Hebrew mindset, relates to our faith. Let us get back to the faith of our fathers, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. We see that Abraham kept all the commandments, statutes and laws of Elohim, as it is written in Genesis 26: 5 ***“because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes and my Laws.”*** Let us strive to do likewise.

Chapter 5: The Image of Elohim.

After our original parents Adam and Eve sinned. YHVH told them that they were made from dust and will return to dust. They made the wrong choice, they took of the forbidden tree, but there were two trees in the midst of the Garden. We read about this in Genesis 2: 9 as follows: ***“And out of the ground YHVH caused to grow every tree that is pleasing to the sight and good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.”*** YHVH did not forbid our original parents from eating from the tree of life, but Satan deceived mother Eve to take and eat from the forbidden tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

YHVH did not slaughter a lamb and covered them in lamb skin after their sin – no He put skin (derma) on their bodies. He did not start the sacrificial system at this stage. Later when Abraham was to sacrifice Isaac, YHVH showed Abraham that He will eventually provide Himself the lamb as a sacrifice to redeem us back from the sins of the world. He will pay our indebtedness due, resulting from our sins, as our Kinsman Redeemer.

Originally our forefathers were destined to live forever; they were created in the image of Elohim according to Genesis 1:27. We know from Colossians 1: 15 that Yahshua is the visible image of the invisible Elohim. So initially after the creation of man, they looked like the transfigured Yahshua, covered in light. However, when our original forefathers sinned, their light covering was removed and they were covered in skin.

We read about this in Genesis 3: 21 ***“And YHVH Elohim made garments of skin⁵ for Adam and his wife, and clothed them.”***

⁵ As a side light, in Hebrew both the word light (אור) and skin (עור) are pronounced as 'ohr', however, the word light is spelt with an aleph and skin with an ayin. Many Christians, Messianic Jews and even Nazarene Jews/Israelites believe that in the account in Genesis 3: 21 YHVH slaughtered a lamb as sacrifice for their sin and to dress Adam and Eve in lamb skin. However, the Scriptures do not say that.

Since then all men are destined to die once. We are physical and therefore we age and eventually die. This also meant that they were no longer in the image of Elohim; they lacked the Shechinah or the Divine Presence (Ruach HaKodesh) of Elohim. Sinning exposed them – they were naked before Elohim. Mankind lost their covering which they had from Elohim.

The 1st Commandment tells us that we should have no other Elohim before or besides Him. In Exodus 3:14 & 15 YHVH tells Moses that He is the “I AM” – the Ever Existing One or the Eternal. Yet in John 8:24 Yahshua said that He is **the “I AM” and if we do not believe that we shall die in our sins.**” In verses 34 to 36 ‘Yahshua answered them (the Jews of His day), **“Truly, truly I say to you, every-one who commits sin is the slave of sin. “And the slave does not remain in the house forever; the son does remain forever. “If therefore the Son shall make you free, you shall be free indeed.”** Because of breaking Torah, our curse is death. However, in Galatians 3 we read in versus 13 & 14 that Messiah redeemed us from the curse of the Law, having become a curse for us for it is written (in Torah) **““Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree or wood” in order that in Messiah Yahshua the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles, so that we might receive the promise of the Spirit (the Divine Presence or Shechinah/Ruach HaKodesh we need to live forever) through faith.’**

Yes, we know that Abraham saw Yahshua’s day as He said in John 8:58 **“Truly, truly, I say to you before Abraham was born I am”**. The Jews of His day, understood that He was saying that He is the Eternal. However they thought that He was blaspheming and wanted to stone Him. He repeated saying that He is the Eternal when He later said to them in John 10: 30: **“I and my Father are one”**. The Jews again reacted by picking up stones to stone Him. They did not believe Yahshua, but thought that He was blaspheming. Do we believe that He is the Eternal? Or do we try and explain it away by saying that He meant that He

was one in mind and Spirit with YHVH? Are we prepared to say in the face of YHVH: when He says in Deuteronomy 6: 4 'That He is One'; that we know He is two and that He lies?

This is not very easy or clear to understand. However we read in Is. 45:15 that YHVH is our Messiah the one who hides Himself as follows: ***“Truly, thou art an Elohim who hides Himself O Elohim of Israel, Savior”*** (or transliterated in Hebrew as Elohey Yisrael Moshiya).

We read that it takes more than a man to bring equality or balance back to what has been destroyed in the Garden of Eden through sin. Isaiah 59:14 – 16 ***“And justice is turn back, And righteousness stands far away; For truth has stumbled in the street, And uprightness cannot enter. Yes, truth is lacking; And he who turns aside from evil makes himself a prey. Now YHVH saw, And it was displeasing in His sight that there was no justice. And He saw that there was no man, And was astonished that there was no one to intercede; Then His own arm brought salvation to Him; And His righteousness upheld Him”***.

Brethren we have lost the glory or shechinah that we had through sin. YHVH redeemed us Himself – there was no man – His own arm brought Salvation to Him. In Ezekiel we read in chapter 22 verses 30 and 31 ***“And I searched for a man among them who should build up a wall and stand in the gap before Me for the land that I should not destroy it; but I found no one. Thus I have poured out My indignation on them; I have consumed them with the fire of My wrath; their way I have brought upon their heads, declares the YHVH Elohim”***.

We were originally made in the image of YHVH and we looked like Yahshua covered in light, but because of sin we became naked. We marred the image of YHVH our Elohim and are now ashamed or uncovered. We need the helmet of salvation to cover our sins. In Isaiah 59:17 we read: ***“And He put on righteousness like a breastplate, And a helmet of salvation***

on His head; And He put on garments of vengeance for clothing. And wrapped Himself with zeal as a mantle". Yahshua essentially represents our helmet of salvation and He covers our sins.

We are no longer on par with the image of Elohim, Yahshua. He is our head and authority as it says in 1 Corinthians 11: 3 **"Yahshua is the head of every man and the head of every woman is a man".**

Let us now discuss the image of Elohim. Scriptures assign attributes to YHVH as may be seen in the following passages:

In Isaiah 11: 2 we read: **"The Spirit of YHVH (Keter) shall rest upon him, the Spirit of Wisdom⁶ (Chochmah) and Understanding (Binah), the Spirit of Counsel (Atzah) and might (Gevurah), the Spirit of Knowledge (Da'at) and of the fear (yirah) of YHVH."**

In 1 Chronicles 29: 11 we read: **"Yours, O YHVH, is the greatness (Chesed), and the power⁷ (Gevurah), and the glory (Tiferet), and the victory (Netzach), and the majesty (Hod): for all that is in the heaven and in the earth is Yours; Yours is the kingdom (Malkut), O YHVH, and You are exalted as Head above all."**

In Isaiah 28: 16 we read: **"I YHVH lay in Zion for a foundation (Yesod), a stone, a tried stone, a sure foundation (Yesod)."**

And in 2 Chronicles 20: 21 we read: **"His [YHVH] mercy (chesed) endures forever".**

These attributes list out as follows:

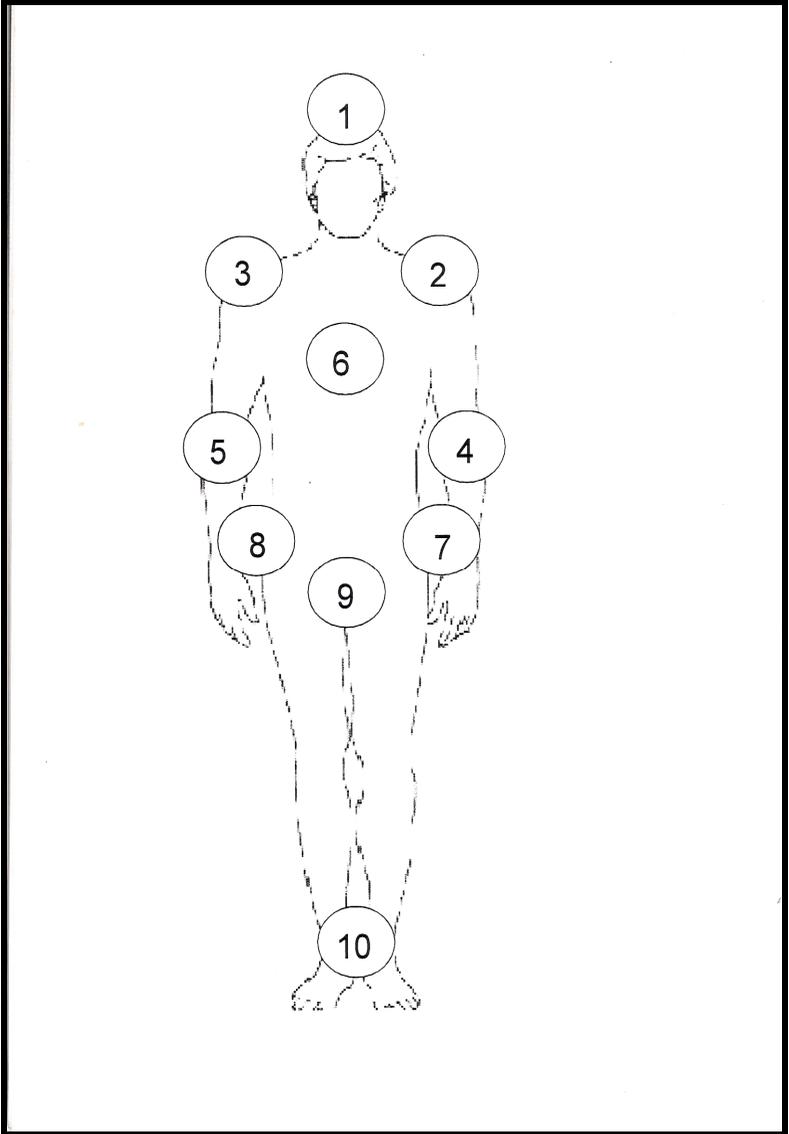
- 1.) The Spirit of YHVH (called Crown [Keter])
- 2.) Wisdom (Chockmah)
- 3.) Understanding (Binah)

⁶ Yahshua is the Wisdom of Elohim: 1 Corinthians 1: 24 & Isaiah 11: 2. Also see Proverbs 8: 22

⁷ Yahshua is the Power of Elohim: 1 Corinthians 1: 24 & Isaiah 11: 2.

- 4.) Mercy, LOVE (Chesed) (also Gedulah and Atzah)
- 5.) Severity (Gevurah)
- 6.) Harmony/Beauty (Tiferet)
- 7.) Victory (Natzach)
- 8.) Splendor (Hod)
- 9.) Foundation (Yesod)
- 10.) Kingdom/Kingship (Malchut)

The first three attributes relate to the Helmet of Salvation. The second three attributes relate to heart or Breastplate of Righteousness. The third three attributes relate to groin or The Belt of Truth. And the last attribute relate to the feet or Shoes of Peace. We need to put these, otherwise known as the full armor of Elohim on, to protect us from principalities (rulers), powers, the world forces of darkness and against the spiritual forces of wickedness in heavenly places (Ephesians 6: 12). This is talking about four classes of demons.



This is what the image of Elohim looks like.

Comparing these four types of demons, we see that they relate to the body segments of the image of Elohim. This full armor is therefore for our protection from head to toe. The Helmet of Salvation protects us from the evil spirits under heaven, known as principalities. The Breastplate of Righteousness protects us from powers, the Belt of Truth protects us from the rulers of darkness of this world, and the Shoes of Peace protect us from the forces of wickedness in heavenly places. Obviously there are four classes of demons parallel to the four body segments of the image of Elohim. The four pieces of armor, is put in place to protect us from the four strategies that Satan uses to deceive mankind. Each of the four items of the full armor of Elohim contrasts each of the basic tactics of Satan as expressed in the Old Covenant:

Helmet of Salvation <> Accusation(Zechariah 3: 1-5)

*The Helmet of Salvation protects us from Satan's tactic of accusation. In 1 Thessalonians 5: 8 it is referred to as the Helmet of Hope of Salvation. Accusation is the primary tactic of Satan. He accuses us day and night according to Revelation 12: 10. The New Covenant refers to Yahshua as the head of the body. Therefore the Helmet is the Helmet of Hope and Salvation, Yahshua. In James 1: 12 we read: "**Blessed is the Man who perseveres under trial; for once he has been approved, he will receive the Crown of life, which YHVH has promised to those who love Him.**" Rav Shaul wrote in 2 Timothy 4: 8 "**in the future there is laid up for me a Crown of righteousness, which YHVH, the righteous Judge, will award to me, but also to all who have loved His appearing.**" The apostle John wrote in Revelation 2: 10 "**...I will give you a Crown of life.**" And in Revelation 3: 11 "**...hold fast what you have, that no one take your Crown.**"*

*The Helmet of Salvation is not only the Crown, but also knowledge. In Hosea 4: 6 we read; "**My people perish for lack of knowledge.**" Satan is the accuser of the brethren, but in Zechariah 3: 1 - 5 we see that Satan also accuses Yahshua, for having a filthy garment on. However, because He is the Helmet*

of the Hope of our Salvation, and due to the fact that He overcame Satan's temptation and accusations, YHVH clothed Him in clean garments and place a clean Turban on His head. This Turban reminds us of the Helmet of the Hope of our Salvation and the knowledge defends us against the attack of accusation.

Breastplate of Righteousness <> Temptation/pride (1 Chronicles 21:1)

Putting on the Breastplate of Righteousness protects us from the tactics of pride and temptation. Temptation is a major tactic of Satan (see 1 Thessalonians 3: 5). Satan tempts us through our own pride. King David was made vulnerable to Satan's attack because he took pride in Israel (See 1 Chronicles 21: 1).

Belt of Truth <> Lies/Deception (Gen3: 1-6)

*Putting on the belt of truth defends us from the tactic of deception. In John 8: 32 we read: **"and you shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free."** In Psalm 119: 142 we read: **"And Thy law (Torah) is truth."** We put the Belt of Truth on by studying the Torah regularly.*

Shoes of Peace <> Oppression (Job & Acts 10: 38)

Putting on the Shoes of Peace defends us from Satan's tactic of oppression. Shalom means more than peace, it also means to be united, to be whole or complete, and to be at peace. The shoes correspond to the feet which represents Kingdom. During the 1000 year rule of Yahshua we will have complete peace.

This sheds light on what it means to put on the full armor of Elohim. Putting on the full armor is the same as putting on the image of YHVH our Elohim, in which we were originally created. This is the same as being conformed to the image of Elohim. While we were created in the image, we must still be conformed to it. Why? Because we are out of balance; As we lack balance

within the attributes of the image of Elohim. This leaves us open to demonic attack through the strategies of Satan.

1 Corinthians 11: 10 we read: ***“Therefore the woman ought to have a symbol of authority on her head, because of the angels”.***

What does this mean? In the Garden of Eden Satan approached Eve alone. She was open to his deception and sinned as a result. Since then YHVH placed her husband in authority over her. To show the Angels and demons (fallen angels) that she is under her husband’s authority, and that he has to go through her husband to get to her, she wears a veil.

In the case of the man Yahshua is in authority over us. He is our Hope of Salvation. We put Yahshua on to eventually, when He returns; receive back the Esteem which Adam and Eve had before their fall. We cover our heads with caps when we worship our Father in Heaven, following the example of King David who when he went up to the mountain summit where Elohim was worshipped, both He and the people covered their heads. We read this in 2 Sam. 15: 30 -32 as follows: ***“And David went up the ascent of the Mount of Olives, and wept as he went, and his head was covered and he walked barefoot. Then all the people who were with him each covered his head and went up weeping as they went. Now someone told David, saying, ‘Ahithophel’ is among the conspirators with Absalom. And David said, “O Eternal, I pray, make the counsel of Ahithophel foolishness”. It happened as David was coming to the summit, where YHVH was worshiped, that behold, Hushai the Archite met him with his coat torn, and dust on his head”.***

If we believe that Yahshua is our Helmet of Salvation, YHVH in the flesh, or the visible Image of the invisible Elohim, we are already a Set-Apart nation, a chosen race, a royal Priesthood and people for Elohim’s own possession, that we may proclaim the excellencies of Him who called you out of darkness (death) into His marvelous light (Eternal life) – through Yahshua. (This

we read in 1 Pet. 2:9) A second witness is found in Revelation 1: 5 – 6 as follows: ***“And from Yahshua Messiah, the faithful witness, the first-born of the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To Him who loves us, and released us from our sins by His blood, and He has made us to be a kingdom, priests to His Elohim and Father; to Him be the glory and the dominion forever and ever. Amein.”***

Ultimately when YHVH has perfected our spirits in Heaven (Hebrews 12: 23) and Yahshua returns to resurrect our bodies and souls we shall be like Him. We read this in 1 John 3: 1 – 3 ***“See how great a love the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called children of Elohim; and such we are. For this reason the world does not know us, because it did not know Him. Beloved, now we are children of Elohim, and it has not appeared as yet what we shall be. We know that, when He appears, we shall be like Him, because we shall see Him just as He is.”*** As our King and High Priest Yahshua will wear a crown and He will officiate between these two offices. Those of us, who will make it into the Kingdom, by overcoming the world, Satan and self, will be a kingdom of priests to our Elohim; and will reign upon the earth.

Brethren we are presently flesh and blood, we are physical and need reminders like Tzitzit to help us keep the commandments. We also need to remind ourselves that we are under Yahshua’s authority and cover our heads to remind us that our image is marred, compared to Him; the image of Elohim, Yes, He is indeed our Helmet of Salvation – our cover for sin, but let us show Him that we honor Him as our Head by covering our heads. We also do this because we are already a kingdom and priests.

Chapter 6: Why do we keep Set-apart Days of YHVH?

In Deuteronomy 14: 22 and 23 we read: ***“You shall surely tithe all the produce from what you sow, which comes out of the field every year. And you shall eat it in the place where He chooses to establish His name, the tithe of your grain, your new wine, your oil, and the first-born of your herd and your flock, in order that you may learn to fear YHVH your Elohim always.”*** We see here that we keep the Feast days of YHVH so that we may learn to fear YHVH always.

Mankind does not want to be prescribed to as to what they should or should not do, even if it is for their own benefit. We all act like most teenage children of today. Whatever we as parents tell our children not to do; is exactly what they will do. Tell them that smoking is detrimental to their health and they will go right ahead and try it. Tell most human beings not to eat pork and they will go ahead eating bacon, ham and gammon steaks. Satan has indeed deceived the whole world as it states in Revelation 12: 9. He wants us to be rebellious like him. He knows that his time is short, and continues to deceive mankind daily.

Even with our best intentions we cannot and will not obey our Father. In Jeremiah 17: 9 we read: ***“The heart is more deceitful than all else and is desperately wicked; who can understand it?”*** By their disobedience to the commandments of YHVH in the Garden of Eden, our forebears implied that they wanted to decide for themselves what is right and wrong. We are no different today, even knowing what is right and what is wrong.

However, we need to decide: Do we want to be in the Kingdom of Elohim or not? If we want to be in His eternal Kingdom, we need to further ask ourselves: What does YHVH expect of us? The answer to this question is given in Deuteronomy 10: 12 & 13 as follows: ***“And now, Israel, what does YHVH your Elohim require from you, but to fear YHVH your Elohim, to walk in all His ways and love Him, and to serve YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, and to keep***

Elohim's commandments and His statutes which I am commanding you today for your good?" Yes brethren, the commandments of YHVH are for our own good.

When Messiah returns He will reward each one of us according to his/her works, the positive fruits that result from an accumulated attitude and character developed over time will be rewarded with a better position – ruler ship over more cities. We must not forget that according to 1 Peter 4:17 that: Judgment is now (during this age) upon the household of YHVH.

What is the fear of YHVH? How do we learn to fear YHVH our Elohim? Let us determine the answers to these questions, by considering the relevant scriptures in the word of YHVH. Let us turn to Hebrews 11: 7 where we read about the faith and fear of our fathers in the faith, as follows: ***'By faith Noah, being warned by Elohim about things not yet seen, in reverence prepared an ark for the salvation of his household, by which he condemned the world, and became an heir of righteousness according to faith.'*** Noah had a fear of YHVH and translated his fear into action, through faith. He feared when YHVH told him to build an ark, despite his neighbor's mocking him and trying to persuade him to disobey YHVH. Other than most people today, he was not concerned with what the people think or say – He carried on doing what YHVH told him to do.

In Genesis 22: 10 -12 we read about our father Abraham, how he translated his fear of YHVH into faith, as follows: ***'And Abraham stretched out his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. But the angel of YHVH called to him from heaven, and said, "Abraham, Abraham!" And he said, "Here I am." And he said, "Do not stretch out your hand against the lad, and do nothing to him; for now I know that you fear Elohim, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from Me.'*** In Hebrews 11: 17 we see that this fear of Abraham came through faith, as follows: ***'By faith Abraham, when he was tested, offered up Isaac; and he who had received the promises was offering up his only begotten son.'***

We all know that true fear involves trembling – almost as if it is very cold. If we are cornered by a fearsome dog we shake like a piece of paper in the wind. In the second part of Isaiah 66: 2 YHVH declares: ***“But to this one I will look, To him who is humble and contrite, and who trembles at My word.”***

Yes brethren, fear for YHVH our Elohim involves trembling: Fear and trembling at the thought of disobeying Elohim. In Psalm 147: 11 we see that: ***‘YHVH favors those who fear Him,’*** We need to stand in awe of Elohim; we need to have a finely tuned conscience. We need to have fear that will motivate changes in us.

We know that YHVH is patient toward us, not wishing for any to perish but for all to come to repentance (see 2 Peter 3 the second part of verse 9), however, according to Hebrews 10: 26 ***‘For if we go on sinning willfully after receiving the knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins.’*** A second witness to this is found in Acts 17: 30 & 31 as follows: ***“Therefore having overlooked the times of ignorance, Elohim is now declaring to men that all everywhere should repent, because He has fixed a day in which He will judge the world in righteousness through a Man whom He has appointed, having furnished proof to all men by raising Him from the dead.”*** We know that there will be two resurrections after Messiah, as we read in 1 Corinthians 15: 23: ***‘But each in his own order, Messiah the first Fruits, after that those who are Messiah’s at His coming (1st Resurrection), then comes the end (2nd Resurrection), when He delivers up the kingdom to Elohim the Father, when He has abolished all rule and all authority and power.*** Yes, brethren each person who has ever lived has a day fixed, when they will get their chance to repent; those who have never heard or known about Yahshua during this age, will get their only chance after the second resurrection. However, we who are called during this age are being judged now according to 1 Peter 4: 17. This tells us that we need to be very careful how we live, because we could because of reckless living, still lose our crowns.

Brethren this should make us fear enough to change our evil ways and start serving YHVH for our own good. However, fear does not mean a lack of faith, or to be fearful, cowardly or insecure. Being fearful is certainly not the fear of Elohim, as we see in James 2: 19 as follows: ***'You believe that Elohim is one, You do well; the demons also believe and shudder.'*** In Revelation 21: 7 & 8 we also read: ***"He who overcomes shall inherit these things, and I will be his Elohim and he will be My son. But for the cowardly and unbelieving and abominable and murderers and immoral persons and sorcerers and idolaters and all liars, their part will be in the lake that burns with fire and brimstone, which is the second death."***

The fear of Elohim stirs to action – it inspires us to want to obey YHVH from the bottom of our hearts. In Psalm 60: 4 it says: ***'Thou hast given a banner to those who fear Thee, That it may be displayed because of truth.'*** However, according to Psalm 36: 1 (paraphrased) 'Transgression or active sin speaks to the sinner within his heart, saying: There is no fear of Elohim!' The process of sinning starts with Satan. (Isaiah 14: 12). Satan lost the fear of Elohim and therefore sinned. Satan weakens the people – by getting them to lose their fear of Elohim. We see from Genesis 3: 1- 3 that Eve feared Elohim at that time. Satan's tactic is to destroy that fear of YHVH our Elohim. In Genesis 3: 6 we see that he destroyed Eve's fear of wrongdoing. We need therefore be very careful of Satan and his human agents, who want to destroy your fear of wrong actions.

We see that the result of sinning lets a different type of fear enter us (see Genesis 3: 9 & 10 as follows; ***'Then YHVH Elohim called to the man and said to him, "Where are you?" And he said, "I heard the sound of Thee in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked; so I hid myself."*** This is the exact opposite of what the fear of YHVH will get us to do. The fear of YHVH encourages us to be brave. However, every man is tempted when he draws away from YHVH. In James 1: 13 & 14 we read: ***'Let no one say when he is tempted, "I am being***

tempted by Elohim”, for Elohim cannot be tempted by evil, and He Himself does not tempt anyone. But each one is tempted when he is carried away and enticed by his own lust.’

As we have already seen, the opposite of the fear of Elohim is being fearful – an attitude which gives up before it starts. We see this in 1 Samuel 3: 11 – 18 as follows: ***‘And YHVH said to Samuel, “Behold, I am about to do a thing in Israel at which both ears of everyone who hears it will tingle. In that day I will carry out against Eli all that I have spoken concerning his house, from beginning to end. For I have told him that I am about to judge his house forever for the iniquity which he knew, because his sons brought a curse on themselves and he did not rebuke them. And therefore I have sworn to the house of Eli that the iniquity of Eli’s house shall not be atoned for by sacrifice or offering forever.” So Samuel lay down until morning. Then he opened the doors of the house of YHVH. But Samuel was afraid to tell the vision to Eli. Then Eli called Samuel and said, “Samuel my son.” And he said. “Here I am.” And he said, “What is the word that He spoke to you? Please do not hide it from me. May Elohim do so to you and more also, if you hide anything from me of all the words that He spoke to you.” So Samuel told him everything and hid nothing from him. And he said, “It is YHVH; let Him do what seems good to Him.”***

A very good example of right fear can be found in Matthew 25: 14 – 16 as follows; ***“For it is just like a man about to go on a journey, who called his own slaves, and entrusted his possessions to them. And to one he gave five talents, to another, two, and to another, one, each according to his own ability; and he went on his journey. Immediately the one who had received the five talents went and traded with them, and gained five more talents.”*** In verse 18 of the same chapter we see an example of wrong fear (fearfulness), as follows: ***“But he who received the one talent went away and dug in the ground, and hid his master’s money.”*** Right fear

brings about happiness and the wrong fear brings about unhappiness.

In Hebrews 4: 1&2 we read: ***“Therefore let us fear lest, while a promise remains of entering His rest, any one of you should seem to have come short of it. For indeed we have had good news preached to us, just as they also; but the word they heard did not profit them, because it was not united by faith in those who heard.”*** We also read about the condition of the world in Romans 3: 18 as follows: ***“There is no fear of Elohim before their eyes.”***

The world lacks the fear of Elohim and the fear of any authority today. Do we also lack the fear of Elohim? I put it to you that we do. Every time that we loose our temper, we show a lack of fear of Elohim. The way we talk show our fear or lack of fear of YHVH our Elohim. Holding on to grudges is indicative of a lack of the fear of Elohim. The way in which we keep the Sabbath shows how we fear YHVH our Elohim.

In 1 John 4: 18 we see paraphrased, that love casts out fear, because fear involves punishment and the one who fears is not perfected in love. Perfect love casts out fear and results in obedience to Torah and commandment keeping - the fear of Elohim never has torment. We read in Proverbs 2: 5 ***‘Then you will discern the fear of YHVH, And discover the knowledge of Elohim.’*** In Ecclesiastes 12: 13 we read: ***‘The conclusion, when all has been heard, is: fear Elohim and keep His commandments, because this applies to every person.’***

The fear of YHVH does not come natural to us, as we have seen in Jeremiah 17: 9: ***“The heart is more deceitful than all else and is desperately wicked; who can understand it?”*** The fear of YHVH has to be taught, as it says in Psalm 34: 11 ***‘Come you children, listen to me; I will teach you the fear of YHVH.’*** If we study the Psalms and indeed the entire Word of YHVH we will learn to fear YHVH our Elohim.

If we fear YHVH enough, each one of us will individually examine the Scriptures for ourselves to determine what YHVH requires of us. Yes, we will listen to what our teachers say, but then we will like the Berean's do as recorded for us in Acts 17: 10 & 11 ***“And the brethren immediately sent Paul and Silas away by night to Berea; and when they arrived, they went into the synagogue of the Jews. Now these were more noble minded than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with great eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily to see whether these things were so.”***

Chapter 7: When do we start counting the Omer (First Fruits)?

We are only a few weeks away from the annual Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread. Usually at this time of the year the differences between the various Messianic/Nazarene Israelite congregations come to light. One of the very important questions that come up at this time is: 'When do we start counting the Omer?'

To answer the question, let us turn to Leviticus 23: 7 where we read: ***'On the first day (this is clearly talking about Unleavened Bread as seen from verses 5&6) you shall have a Set-apart convocation; you shall not do any laborious work.'*** This is a day of rest or otherwise known as an annual sabbath (we see that Leviticus 23: 24⁸, 32⁹ and 39¹⁰ talks about the annual Set-apart days as Sabbaths KJV). In verse 8 of Leviticus 23 we read that on the seventh day of Unleavened Bread, we shall also have a Set-apart convocation and not do any laborious work. This is also a day of rest or the second annual Sabbath of the year commencing on the 1st of Aviv.

Continuing on in verse 9 we see that YHVH is again speaking to Moses saying (quoting from Leviticus 23: 10): ***"Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, 'When you enter the land, which I am going to give to you and reap its harvest, then you shall bring the sheaf of the first fruits of your harvest to the priest. 'And he shall wave the sheaf before YHVH for you to be accepted; on the day after the sabbath'¹¹ the priest***

⁸ In Leviticus 23: 24 we read: 'Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, In the seventh month on the first of the month, you shall have a sabbath rest, a reminder by blowing of trumpets, a Set-apart convocation.'

⁹ In Leviticus 23: 32 we read: "It is to be a sabbath of complete rest to you, and you shall humble your souls; on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening until evening you shall keep your sabbath."

¹⁰ In Leviticus 23: 39 we read: 'On exactly the fifteenth day of the month, when you have gathered in the crops of the land, you shall celebrate the feast of YHVH for seven days, with a rest on the first day and a sabbath rest on the eighth day.'

¹¹ In Leviticus 23:11 The Septuagint LXX speaks of bringing the Omer in on 'THE DAY AFTER THE FIRST DAY' [of Unleavened Bread on Aviv 15th] and tells us to count 7 full

shall wave it. Before we continue please note when this is suppose to take place - in verse 10 it clearly specifies, 'when you enter the land which I am going to give you.'

Let's hold that thought for a moment and continue reading from verse 12 to 14 as follows: 12'**Now on the day when you wave the sheaf, you shall offer a male lamb one year old without defect for a burnt offering to YHVH.**¹³ **'Its grain offering shall then be two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil, an offering by fire to YHVH for a soothing aroma, with its libation, a fourth of a hin of wine.**¹⁴ **'Until this same day (when the Priest waved the wave sheaf), until you have brought in the offering of your Elohim, you shall eat neither bread nor roasted grain nor new growth. It is a perpetual statute throughout your generations in all your dwelling places.** (Verse 14 is the key to sort things out.)

Reading on from verse 15 and 16 **"You shall also count for yourself from the day after the sabbath (the Jewish Bible JPS 1917 translation reads 'from the morrow after the day of rest'), from the day when you brought in the sheaf of the wave offering; there shall be seven complete sabbaths."** (In the Septuagint LXX the last three words read 'SEVEN FULL WEEKS'.)

YHVH is using the phrase that I underlined to specify that the day on which you should start counting, is the day after doing something very specific.

Comparing Leviticus 23: 15 & 16 with Deuteronomy 16 verse 9 & 10 where it reads as follows: **"You shall count seven weeks for yourself; you shall begin to count seven weeks from the time you begin to put the sickle to the standing grain. Then you shall celebrate the Feast of Weeks to YHVH your Elohim with a freewill offering of your hand, which you shall give just as YHVH your Elohim blesses you;"** Here in

weeks. The term 'morrow after the Shabbat' is replaced with "AFTER THE FIRST DAY." This differs from the Masoretic text, from which most modern translations are sourced.

Deuteronomy we see that the 'Feast of First Fruits' is called the 'Feast of Weeks', which is in line with the Septuagint LXX translation of Leviticus 23.

Now we have reached the point where we need to see which one of these two opinions is correct. Counting from the day after the weekly Sabbath or counting from the day after the annual Sabbath? How is it possible to prove which view is correct? Back in Leviticus 23: 10 we read specifically: ***'when you enter the land which I am going to give you.'*** This tells us that we need to go to the book of Joshua to see what happened after the Israelites entered the land which YHVH gave them.

We notice in Joshua 5: 3 that Joshua circumcised the sons of Israel. He did this because all the males who came out of Israel were circumcised, but all the men of war died in the wilderness along the way. All the males who were born in the wilderness along the way out of Egypt had not been circumcised. In Joshua 5: 10 & 11 we read: ***'While the sons of Israel camped at Gilgal, they observed the Passover on the evening of the fourteenth day of the month on the desert plains of Jericho. And on the day after the Passover, on the very day, they ate some of the produce of the land, unleavened cakes and parched grain.'*** Comparing this with Leviticus 23: 14 where we read: ***"until you have brought in the offering (i.e. until the priest waved the sheaf) of your Elohim, you shall eat neither bread nor roasted grain nor new growth."***

Israel is forbidden to eat grain or corn until the Omer is harvested and waved by the priest. If the day after the weekly Sabbath is where we count the Omer from and Sunday is always the day on which the Feast of First Fruits is to be kept, then Joshua sinned and caused the whole house of Israel to sin with him, as he allowed them to eat grain and the produce of the land the day after Passover.

The wording of Joshua 5 shows that what allowed Israel to eat grain was the passing of the Passover and not the passing of the alleged weekly Sabbath. Fixed Sunday-to-Sunday (First Fruits to

Pentecost) counting is a direct contradiction of Joshua chapter 5: 10 – 12. Here we see that the grain was eaten on the night of the 15th becoming the 16th Aviv.

The expression 'the day after the Sabbath' in Leviticus 23 has been misunderstood as meaning that the first fruit sheaf was always to be made on the day following the Sabbath. This view was adopted by the Sadducees (Karaites today) and certain modern interpreters. However, it is clear from the above discussion that the first annual Sabbath day (the 1st day of Unleavened Bread) was meant as may be seen in Joshua 5: 11. We have also seen that some of the other Set-apart days of YHVH are referred to in the same book of Leviticus 23 as Sabbaths in verses 24, 32 and 39.

Most believers agree that Yahshua was impaled on a Wednesday (or the middle of the week) on the 14th Aviv. He rose exactly three days later at the end of the weekly Sabbath. We know that Yahshua kept the Passover 24 hours before our Jewish brothers of His day did. Yahshua kept the Passover in the night during which He was betrayed; we keep it annually on the same evening, i.e. the 14th Aviv as the 13th of Aviv ends, in remembrance of Him.

Yahshua did not change any of the other Feast Days of YHVH during His 1st advent, or else Rav Shaul (or one of His other apostles) would have recorded it for us, as he (Rav Shaul) did the Passover in 1 Corinthians 11. Instead of a major change, we notice in Acts 2: 1 '**And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.**' Wow, this is rare! Nobody argued about the calendar like we do today and this was only days after Yahshua's resurrection as recorded in Acts 1: 9.

The Sunday Pentecost factions say that 1 Corinthians 15: 20 prove that Messiah was indeed the wave sheaf. Let's study it for ourselves, it reads: '**But now Messiah has been raised from the dead, the first fruits (aparche) of those who are asleep.**' The Greek word 'aparche' translated 'first fruits' in 1 Corinthians

15 is singular, not plural and should read first fruit. Messiah Yahshua is 'the first fruit' not 'the first fruits'. The wave sheaf represents the first fruits (plural).

Those who are called during this age, will if they make it, be resurrected when Messiah returns. They are those called and chosen, the ecclesia of RENEWED COVENANT ISRAELITES as recorded in Revelation 14: 4 as follows: ***“These are the ones who have not been defiled with woman, for they have kept themselves chaste. These are the ones who follow the Lamb wherever He goes. These have been purchased from among men as first fruits to Elohim and to the Lamb.”*** We who believe that we are the first fruits¹², will again be counting the Omer from the day after the 1st day of Unleavened Bread on the night of the 15th becoming the 16th Aviv, this year. HalleluYah!

¹² James 1: 18 'In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.'

Chapter 8: Who has the oracles of YHVH our Elohim?

There are many groups today who believe that they have the oracles of YHVH our Elohim. This is in fact exactly what the Roman Catholic Church believes. The question is: Where does this belief come from? Most Catholics know the answer to this question. They believe it comes from the incident where Yahshua asked His disciples in Matthew 16: 15 ***“But who do you say that I am?”*** This is one of a very few scriptures that most Catholics know very well.

We read in Matthew 16: 16, ***‘And Simon Peter (Kepha) answered and said, “Thou art the Messiah (the anointed one), the Son of the living Elohim.”*** In verses 17 to 19 of Matthew 16, we read Yahshua’s response to Peter’s answer, as follows: ***‘And Yahshua answered and said to him, “Blessed are you Simon Barjona, because flesh and blood did not reveal this to you, but My Father who is in heaven.” “And I also say to you that you are Peter (a small pebble), and upon this rock (Messiah Himself as we read in the last part of 1 Corinthians 10: 4) I will build my Ecclesia; and the gates of Hades shall not over-power it (we His ecclesia, known as the body of Messiah will not all die out, before His return).” “I will give you (talking specifically to Peter) the keys of the kingdom of heaven (the truth about the kingdom of heaven - see Acts 2: 38¹³, Acts 4: 11 & 12¹⁴ and 1 Peter 2: 8¹⁵); and whatever you shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you shall loose on the earth shall be loosed in heaven.”***

¹³ Acts 2:38 *‘And Peter said to them, “Repent, and let each one of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit.”*

¹⁴ Acts 4: 11 & 12 *Here Peter talking about Yahshua said: “He is the STONE WHICH WAS REJECTED by you, THE BUILDERS, but WHICH BECAME THE VERY CORNER stone. “And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name under heaven that has been given among men, by which we must be saved.”*

¹⁵ 1 Peter 2: 8 *‘and “A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENSE”; for they stumble because they are disobedient to the word (Yahshua Himself), and to this doom they were also appointed.’*

We see from the Scriptures given above and quoted in the footnote here below, that Peter understood, that Yahshua was talking about Himself as the Rock in Matthew 16: 17 -19. Peter goes into this in more detail in 1 Peter 2: 1 – 10. According to the apostle Peter, we who are called during this age, who understand that Yahshua is YHVH in the flesh and hence also the Rock of our salvation (spoken of in the first part Deuteronomy 32: 4¹⁶ as well as in Isaiah 44 in the last part of verse 8¹⁷), we do not stumble any longer over who Yahshua is and for this reason Peter calls us in 1 Peter 2: 9: ***'A CHOSEN RACE, A royal PRIESTHOOD, A SET-APART NATION, A PEOPLE FOR ELOHIM'S OWN POSSESSION, that you may proclaim the excellencies of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.'***

We know that the Ecclesia is build on Yahshua the Rock of our Salvation, but, our Catholic brothers interpret Matthew 16: 17 – 19 as if Yahshua was telling Peter that He (Yahshua) has given him (Peter – whom they believe was the first Pope) more than just the knowledge about the Kingdom of Elohim. They believe that Yahshua has given them the so-called oracles of YHVH; that is, they decide when and how we worship YHVH our Elohim. They believe that the Pope is the vicar of Messiah (the one they call Christ) – meaning that the Pope is currently in place of Messiah on the earth. They also accordingly believe that whatever the Pope says from the pulpit is binding on all of Christianity. Preposterous! Aren't we blessed that we are not Christian.

However, there are also today Nazarene Israelites who believe that the apostles received the oracles of Elohim from Yahshua and by extension the true assemblies of Yahweh. I have seen many groups on the internet calling themselves, "Assemblies of YHVH." In fact our small assembly here in Port Elizabeth is also

¹⁶ In the first part of Deuteronomy 4: 32 we read: *"The Rock! His work is perfect."*

¹⁷ In the last part of Isaiah 44: 8 we read: *"Is there any Elohim besides Me, Or is there any other Rock? I know of none."*

known as the “Assembly of YHVH – Nazarene Fellowship”. However, we are not associated with any of the other Assemblies of YHVH on the internet. Very few of those who call themselves by that name are associated with one another. In addition very few of these Assemblies of YHVH agree about the calendars that they follow.

My question is therefore: Who are the true assemblies of YHVH? We have already seen that the apostle Peter did not agree with the view held by the Assemblies of YHVH in the paragraph above. Did the other apostles agree with this view? It is difficult to say, since we only have the Apostle Paul’s (Rav Shaul’s) view recorded for us in The Scriptures. We see from the few scriptures quoted below, that Rav Shaul definitely did not agree with the view of these Assemblies of YHVH.

We know that the tanach (Old Covenant) is the public literature of a people. That people was ancient Israel. It was organized as the nation and congregation of YHVH. To that people were entrusted the oracles of YHVH – the revelation to mankind of important knowledge of YHVH. In Acts 7: 38 & 39 we see the martyr Stephen, talking about Moses, said: ***“This is the one who was in the congregation in the wilderness together with the angel who was speaking to him on Mount Sinai, and who was with our fathers; and he received living oracles to pass on to you. And our fathers were unwilling to be obedient ...”***

Rav Shaul continues the thought in Romans 3: 1 through the first part of verse 4 as follows: ***‘Then what advantage has the Jew? Or What is the benefit of circumcision? Great in every respect, First of all, that they were entrusted with the oracles of Elohim. What then? If some did not believe, their unbelief will not nullify the faithfulness of Elohim, will it? May it never be! Rather Let Elohim be found true, though every man be found a liar ...’*** In Romans 9: 1- 4 Rav Shaul writes as follows: ***‘I am telling the truth in Messiah, I am not lying, my conscience bearing me witness in the Set-apart Spirit, that I have great sorrow and unceasing grief in my heart. For I could wish that I myself were accursed, separated from Messiah for the sake of my brethren, my***

kinsmen according to the flesh (Jews), who are Israelites (yes, Jews are also Israelites), to whom belongs the adoption as sons and the esteem (glory) and the covenants and the giving of the Law and the temple service and the promises.'

Here we have it Rav Shaul saying in The Scriptures, that the Jews were entrusted with the oracles of YHVH our Elohim. In fact we also have Yahshua's word recorded for us in Matthew 23: 1 - 3 on the matter, as follows: ***Then Yahshua spoke to the multitudes and to His disciples, saying, "The scribes and the Pharisees have seated themselves in the chair of Moses; therefore all that they tell you, do and observe, but do not do according to their deeds; for they say things, and do not do them."*** This whole discussion happened well after the event discussed earlier in Matthew 16. In Leviticus 23 in verses 2 and 4 YHVH says to Moses: ***"These are the appointed times of YHVH, Set-apart convocations which you shall proclaim at the time appointed for them."*** Notice in Leviticus 23 that YHVH specified specifically to Moses, when the Sabbath day is, i.e. on the seventh day, but the Set-part days are to be proclaimed by Moses or whoever sits in his seat, provided that it is at the appointed times – as per Exodus 23: 16.

From this it is clear to me, that we should follow the oracles or standards preserved for us by the Jews, when it comes to observing the Set-apart days of YHVH and not those of the leaders in Israel. This is confirmed in Ezekiel 13: 2 – 4 and 9 as follows: ***"Son of man prophesy against the prophet of Israel who prophesy; and say to those who prophesy from their own inspiration 'Listen to the word of YHVH' Thus says YHVH "Woe to the foolish prophets who are following their own spirit and have seen nothing. O Israel your prophets have been like foxes among ruins." "So My hand will be against the prophets who see false visions and utter lying divinations. They will have no place in the council of my people (the council who decides about the Set-apart Days of YHVH – the Sanhedrin), ***nor will they be written down in the register of the house of Israel, nor will they enter the land of Israel, that you may know that I am YHVH Elohim.***"***

There is a warning not to follow false prophets/leaders in keeping the oracles of Elohim, in Jeremiah 23: 32 – 36. It reads as follows: ***“Behold I am against those who have prophesied false dreams.” declares YHVH “and related them, and led my people astray by their falsehoods and reckless boasting; yet I did not send them or command them, nor do they furnish this people the slightest benefit.” Declares YHVH: “Now when this people or a prophet or a priest asks you saying, ‘what is the oracle (or burden/ standard) of YHVH?’ Then you shall say to them, “What Oracle?” YHVH declares ‘I shall abandon you.’ “Then as for the prophet or the priest or the people who say, The ‘Oracle of YHVH.’ I shall bring punishment upon that man and his household. “Thus shall each of you say to his neighbor and to his brother, ‘what has YHVH answered?’ or ‘what has YHVH spoken?’ “For you will no longer remember the oracle of YHVH, because every man’s own word will become the oracle and you have perverted the oracles of the living Elohim, YHVH of host our Elohim.”*** Here we are told that we will forget the oracles of YHVH, because every man’s own word will become the oracle and as a result we have perverted the word of the living Elohim. I believe that this has in fact happened in our day?

We better make sure that we keep the Feast Days of YHVH at the correct time, as there is also a warning about this recorded in Malachi 2:1 – 8 as follows: ***“And now, O Priests, this commandment is for you. If ye will not hear, and if ye will not take it to heart, to give esteem to My Name, said YHVH of hosts, “I shall send a curse upon you, and I shall curse your blessings, And indeed, I have cursed them, because you do not take it to heart. See, I shall rebuke your seed, and scatter dung before your faces, the dung of your festivals. And you shall be taken away with it. And you shall know that I have sent this covenant to you as being My covenant with Levi, said YHVH of Hosts. My covenant with him was life and peace, and I gave them to him, to fear. And he feared Me, and stood in awe of My Name. The Torah of truth was in his mouth, and unrighteousness was not found***

on his lips. He walked with Me in peace and straightness, and turned many away from crookedness. For the lips of a priest should guard knowledge, and they seek the Torah from his mouth, for he is the messenger of the covenant of Levi, said YHVH of Hosts. But you, you have turned from the way, you have caused many to stumble in the Torah. You have corrupted the covenant of Levi said YHVH of Hosts.”

In Genesis 49: 10 we read: ***“The scepter shall not depart from Judah*** (as far as religious matters are concerned), ***Nor the ruler’s staff from between his feet, until Yahshua comes, and to him shall be the obedience of the people.*** (Also see Psalm 60: 7). Whilst Yahshua’s first advent was to bring Salvation to all mankind and to die, to be able to remarry His bride, United Israel, His second advent is to come and rule the world from Jerusalem, when all people will obey Him. We know that all people did not obey him at his coming, but that all knees will bow before Him at His return.

We also know that Yahshua corrected the occurrence of the Passover, his reason for the 1st advent, to die as our Passover lamb, when He kept the Passover a whole 24 hours before the Jews of His day did – at sunset on the 13th of Aviv, as the new day (the 14th of Aviv) commenced. That was the only adjustment that He made to the annual Set-apart Day cycle at that time – He kept the other Set-apart days with His people. He will if necessary also correct any other problems regarding the Hebrew calendar, when He returns to rule, as it says in Genesis 49: 10.

Finally I would like to ask the assemblies of YHVH who say that they now have the oracles of YHVH, why is the following recorded for us in Zechariah 8: 23: ***“Thus says YHVH of hosts, ‘In those days ten men*** (non-Jewish Israelites) ***from all the nations will grasp the garment of a Jew saying, “Let us go with you, for we have heard that Elohim is with you.”***

Chapter 9: Immersion and the Passover.

At the time of the annual Passover we need to answer a very important question: namely, who is eligible to partake of the Passover?

In Colossians 2: 9 – 13 we read: ***'For in Him (Yahshua) all the fullness of Deity dwells in bodily form, and in Him you have been made complete, and He is the head over all rule and authority; and in Him you were also circumcised with a circumcision made without hands, in the removal of the body of the flesh by the circumcision of Messiah; Having been buried with Him in immersion, in which you were also raised up with Him through faith in the working of Elohim, who raised Him from the dead. And when you were dead in your transgressions and the un-circumcision of your flesh, He made you alive together with Him, having forgiven us all our transgressions.'***

We see here that immersion has become the 'circumcision of Messiah'. We also read in Galatians 3: 27 – 29 as follows: ***'For all of you who were immersed into Messiah have clothed yourselves with Messiah. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free man, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in Messiah Yahshua. And if you belong to Messiah, Then you are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to promise.'*** The promise was an eternal covenant, which is between YHVH and Abraham and his offspring. The covenant made with Abraham was as recorded in Genesis 17 and especially verse 12: ***"And every male among you who is eight days old shall be circumcised throughout your generations..."*** The conditions of the covenant are recorded in verse 8 of Genesis 17 as follows: ***"And I will give to you and to your descendants after you, the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their Elohim."*** We see therefore that the covenant of circumcision has nothing to do with salvation, but it has to do with living in the land of Canaan.

In addition we read in Roman 6: 1 – 8 ***‘What shall we say then? Are we to continue in sin that grace might increase? May it never be! How shall we who died to sin still live in it? Or do you not know that all of us who have been immersed into Messiah Yahshua have been immersed into His death? Therefore we have been buried with Him through immersion into death, in order that as Messiah was raised from the dead through the esteem of the Father, so we too might walk in newness of life. For if we have become united with Him in the likeness of His death, certainly we shall be also in the likeness of His resurrection, knowing this, that our old self was impaled with Him, that our body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin; for he who died is freed from sin. Now if we have died with Messiah, we believe that we shall also live with Him.’***

Our father in the faith, Abraham was circumcised at a very old age. However, we see in his case that he believed YHVH before he was circumcised. This is recorded for us in Genesis 15: 6 as follows: ***‘Then he believed in YHVH; and He (YHVH) reckoned it to him (Abram) as righteousness.’*** When he was circumcised as a sign of the covenant between him and YHVH, his name was changed to Abraham. Since then all Israelites and their children were circumcised at the age of eight days old. However, many of us Israelites, who lost our identity as Israel, became like gentiles and stopped circumcising our children, because we believed that the Torah was done away with. In some of our cases, our renewed belief in Yahshua our Messiah also came first.

In Acts 15 there is a great discussion concerning circumcision. In verse 1, certain men from Judea (Jews) taught the brethren that ‘except ye be circumcised after the manner of Moses, ye cannot be saved.’ Rav Shaul and Barnabas disputed with them (verse 2), and it was decided that Paul, Barnabas and certain others would go to Jerusalem to get the opinion of the Apostles residing there. But when they presented their case, some of the Pharisees who believed (on Yahshua) said that the Gentiles

should be circumcised, and keep all the law's of Moses (verse 5). After a further discussion it was decided in verses 19 to 21 that: ***“Therefore it is my judgment that we do not trouble those who are turning (or returning) to Elohim from among the Gentiles, but that we write to them that they abstain from things contaminated by idols and from fornication and from what is strangled and from blood. For Moses from ancient generations has in every city those who preach him (Moses), since he is read in the synagogues every Sabbath.”*** This is essentially saying that when new believers come into the faith, we should not demand that they be circumcised as soon as they come to believe on Yahshua.

But, when they come to believe that Yahshua is their Savior, they should be immersed in His Saving Name for the forgiveness of their sins, as we read in Acts 2: 38 as follows: ***‘And Peter said to them, “Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Ruach HaKodesh.”*** Repentance is a process, in that, as we walk with YHVH according to Yahshua's Halacha (or how He conducted His life); we will learn to obey Him more fully and start applying His Torah teachings in our lives.

Rav Shaul, who was personally and privately taught by Yahshua according to Galatians 5: 11 – 12, made it clear that he did not teach circumcision as a requirement for salvation, or as (initially) necessary for new converts. They will eventually, as they attend the synagogues on the Sabbath, learn to obey the Torah teachings of Elohim. We have already learnt that Abraham obeyed the Torah teachings of YHVH well before it was given to Moses on Mount Sinai. We read about this in Genesis 26: 5 as follows: ***‘because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes and my Laws.’*** Is this not interesting? Most ministers in Christianity have taught for many years that the commandments, statutes and Laws of YHVH, came through Moses, who only came onto the scene 430 years

later. But here the Scriptures says that the Torah was known and practiced by Abraham 430 years before Moses.

The original covenant made with Abraham is the same covenant renewed at Mount Sinai with Moses and the Israelites. The only difference being, that because of sin, the Sacrificial Law practiced by the Levitical Priesthood was added. The only thing that was different is not Torah, but how the administration for the remission of sins was carried out. The sacrificial law, the tutor mentioned in Galatians 3: 16 -19, was then added to the covenant to attend to the problem of sin, until Messiah became the sacrifice – the lamb who died for the sins of the world.

In Genesis 17: 7, 10, and 13 we read: ***“And I will establish My covenant between Me and you and your seed after you in their generations for an everlasting covenant.....”*** ***“This is My covenant which you shall keep between Me and you and your descendants after you: Every male child among you shall be circumcised.”*** ***“and My covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant.”*** This is rather interesting, because when people speak against circumcision as such, they speak of it as if it originated in the Torah given to and through Moses. However, we know that the covenant between YHVH and Abraham was sealed with a sign of circumcision, 430 years earlier. It had nothing to do with the sacrificial law, as so many who teach against circumcision asserts. Our father Abraham was a man of faith and as Yahshua said to the Jews in John 8: 56 ***“Your father Abraham rejoiced to see My day, and he saw it and was glad.”*** Abraham a man of faith translated his faith into works as we read in James 2: 21 as follows: ***‘Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he offered up Isaac his son on the altar? Brethren, Abraham heard the gospel and knew the grace of YHVH, even as we did; yet, as we have read before, he obeyed the Torah fully. Abraham and his children were circumcised. Moses and the children of Israel were likewise circumcised. We also know that Yahshua was circumcised on the 8th day after His birth as may be read in Luke 2: 21.***

The sacrificial system was changed and not Torah. Circumcision was never part of the sacrificial system. The book of Hebrews explains this and is a key to understanding the book of Galatians, showing how remission of sin through the payment of debt through animal sacrifices was replaced with justification through the blood of Yahshua. This means that anyone who comes to believe in Yahshua as Messiah has to be immersed to receive the promise of the Ruach Ha Kodesh. We know that both Yahshua our Messiah and Rav Shaul, being Jewish were circumcised when they were only eight days old. However we also know that both of them were immersed. In Matthew 3: 16 we read: ***'And after being immersed, Yahshua went up immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened, and he saw the Spirit of Elohim descending as a dove, and coming upon Him.'*** We also read about Rav Shaul's immersion in Acts 9: 18 ***'And immediately there fell from his eyes something like scales, and he regained his sight, and he arose and was immersed.'***

Rav Shaul was taught for three years after his immersion, to become one of Yahshua's apostles. We read about this in Acts 9: 22 – 23 ***'But Saul kept increasing in strength and confounding the Jews who lived at Damascus by proving that this Yahshua is the Messiah. And when many days (three years¹⁸) had elapsed, the Jews plotted together to do away with him.'*** In Galatians 1: 1 we read that: ***'Rav Shaul an apostle (not sent from men, nor through the agency of man, but through Yahshua Messiah, and Elohim the Father, who raised Him from the dead).'***

It took three years for Rav Shaul to learn the Halacha that Yahshua taught, even though he was a Jew by birth. The other apostles were similarly taught by Yahshua for about three and a half years, before they were ready to immerse other believers

¹⁸ Galatians 1: 17 & 18 (Rav Shaul talking) *'Nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me; but I went away to Arabia, and returned once more to Damascus. Then three years later I went up to Jerusalem to become acquainted with Kepha, and stayed with him fifteen days.'*

and teach them the Halacha that Yahshua taught them – bearing in mind that they were also mostly Jews by birth (and therefore already circumcised).

As Rav Shaul was inspired to write in Romans 2: 25 – 29: ***‘For indeed circumcision is of value, if you practice the Law; but if you are a transgressor of the Law, your circumcision has become un-circumcision. If therefore the un-circumcised man keeps the requirements of the Law, will not his un-circumcision be regarded as circumcision? And will not he who is physically un-circumcised, if he keeps the Law, will he not judge you who though having the letter of the Law and circumcision are a transgressor of the Law? For he is not a Jew who is one outwardly; neither is circumcision that which is outward in the flesh. But he is a Jew who is one inwardly; and circumcision is that which is of the heart, by the Spirit, not by the letter; and his praise is not from men, but from Elohim.’***

At this time YHVH is calling people out of the darkness of this world into His marvelous light. He is calling us by the word of truth to be first fruits¹⁹ among His creatures, who if we make it into the Kingdom will become kings and priests under Yahshua for a thousand years and into eternity. We read about this in Revelation 5: 10 as follows: ***“And Thou hast made them to be a kingdom and priests to our Elohim; and they will reign upon the earth.”*** For a second witness to this we read in the last part of Revelation 20: 4 ***‘And they came to life and reigned with Messiah for a thousand years.’***

To tie up the loose ends, let us turn to Galatians 5: 1 – 7 ***“It was for freedom that Messiah set us free; therefore keep standing firm and do not be subject again to a yoke of slavery. Behold I, Paul say to you that if you receive circumcision, Messiah will be of no benefit to you. And I***

¹⁹ See James 1: 18 *‘In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’*

testify again to every man who receives circumcision, that he is under obligation to keep the whole Law. You have been severed from Messiah, you who are seeking to be justified by law; you have fallen from grace. For we through the Spirit, by faith, are waiting for the hope of righteousness. For in Messiah Yahshua neither circumcision nor un-circumcision means anything, but faith working through love. You were running well; who hindered you from obeying the truth?"

This sounds like as if Rav Shaul is saying that anyone who allows himself to be circumcised has lost his salvation. Does it not? However, he is saying that the so-called Judaizers were teaching salvation by works, and not by grace. This is not easily understood. We cannot work for our salvation and yet we cannot be saved without 'works'²⁰ – which proves our faith. Commandment keeping on its own will not bring salvation. We must also have Yahshua's grace to forgive us our past sins. It takes both – obedience and Yahshua's grace to bring us to salvation. Immediately after the Jerusalem Conference, where circumcision was discussed in Acts 15, we notice that Rav Shaul goes on to have Timothy his disciple circumcised. This is recorded in Acts 16: 1 – 3 as Follows: ***'And he came also to Derbe and to Lystra. And behold, a certain disciple was there, named Timothy, the son of a Jewish woman who was a believer, but his father was a Greek, and he was well spoken of by the brethren who were in Lystra and Iconium. Paul wanted this man to go with him; and he took him and circumcised him because of the Jews who were in those parts, for they all knew that his father was a Greek.'***

Do you believe that Rav Shaul caused Timothy to lose his salvation by having him circumcised? From his writings it appears as if Rav Shaul was against circumcision. However, we see here that he actually upheld the covenant of circumcision. Remember that Rav Shaul's writings about circumcision have

²⁰ See James 2: 26 'For just as the body without the spirit is dead, so also faith without works is dead.'

been misread, misunderstood and taken out of context, essentially 'giving' him the 'power' to change the Torah, which he in fact never had. He was never supposed to be a 'law giver'²¹. We find that the anti-law teachers similarly twist Rav Shaul's teachings about the Sabbath, clean food and the annual Set-apart Days. In fact Rav Shaul never spoke against Torah on any of these subjects, despite the many un-learned arguments to the contrary.

Now onto the subject of circumcision of the heart. Immersion is believed by many to be the new (or rather renewed) covenant circumcision – the circumcision of Messiah. We know that this is true, as we have read it earlier in the Scriptures. However, when we look into the Scriptures we find that circumcision of the heart was already mentioned in Deuteronomy 10: 16 as follows: ***“Circumcise then your heart and stiffen your neck no more.”*** We read more about this in Deuteronomy 30: 6 as follows: ***“Moreover YHVH your Elohim will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, in order that you may live.”*** Other scriptures talking about circumcision of the heart may be found in Jeremiah 4: 4 and Jeremiah 9: 26. We who are called during this age and who know that Yahshua is the Rock of our Salvation are according to the teaching in 1 Peter 2: 8 & 9 , a chosen race (the Israel of Elohim), a royal priesthood, a Set-apart Nation, a people for Elohim's own possession.

In Ezekiel 44: 1 we read about the outer gate of the sanctuary, which faces the east and was shut. In verse 2 we read: ***“And YHVH said to me, “This gate shall be shut; it shall not be opened, and no one shall enter by it, for YHVH Elohim of Israel has entered by it; therefore it shall be shut.”*** In verse 3 it mentions the prince Yahshua who shall enter by way of the porch of the gate, and shall go out by the same way. This is a scene of the future when Yahshua will have returned already. In Ezekiel 44: 7 to 9 we read: ***‘When you brought in foreigners,***

²¹ James 4: 12 *‘There is only one Lawgiver and Judge, the One who is able to save and to destroy; but who are you who judge your neighbor?’*

uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh, to be in My sanctuary to profane it, even My house, when you offered My food, the fat and the blood; for they made My covenant void – this in addition to all your abominations. And you have not kept charge of My Set-apart things yourselves, but you have set foreigners to keep charge of My sanctuary.” ‘Thus says YHVH Elohim, “No foreigner, uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh, of all the foreigners who are among the sons of Israel, shall enter My sanctuary.’

This quote from Ezekiel should make us think - it is a thought provoking end-time prophecy. If we who believe that we are already a kingdom of priests, think we are circumcised in heart, and refuse to be circumcised in the flesh, is that not rebellion? Can we truly have a circumcised heart, and yet refuse His commandment for a fleshly one, too? It is just a matter of which comes first. We have seen that Abraham was circumcised in heart, first. His obedience and faith in Yahweh preceded his fleshly circumcision. But, when Yahweh gave him that requirement – when He said, “cut off your foreskin, you and all your males for all generations”, Abraham didn’t quibble.

From the above we come to the conclusion that all new believers in Yahshua have to be immersed, whether they are Jews or Gentiles. After immersion they have to learn the Torah and to observe all that Yahshua commanded His disciples. It is whilst Gentile believers learn Torah, that they will be taught, that if they belong to Messiah, they are Abraham’s offspring, heirs according to promise. They will also learn that as Abraham’s offspring they will have to be circumcised as specified in the covenant given in Genesis 17: 10 – 12, bearing in mind that circumcision was never part of the sacrificial system. In addition we know that the covenant between YHVH and Abraham was never abolished.

The Passover points toward Yahshua's sacrifice to pay the death penalty that we incurred by our law-breaking, as we read in 1 Corinthians. 5:7-8 as follows: ***‘Clean out the old leaven that***

you may be a new lump, just as Messiah our Passover also has been sacrificed. Let us therefore celebrate the feast, not with old leaven, nor with the leaven of malice and wickedness, but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.’ By His shed blood Yahshua reconciled us to the Father, making it possible for us to have direct access to the throne of YHVH. We believe that repentance; immersion in Yahshua’s Name and accepting His sacrifice, constitutes a covenant with YHVH. The terms of which is sealed with the shed blood of Messiah Yahshua and is renewed yearly when we partake of the Passover, as we read in Hebrews 9: 11 - 12 & 15: ***‘But when Yahshua appeared as a high priest of the good things to come, He entered through the greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this creation; and not through the blood of goats and calves, but through His own blood, He entered the holy place once for all, having obtained eternal redemption. And for this reason He is the mediator of a new covenant, in order that since a death has taken place for the redemption of the transgressions that were committed under the first Priesthood, those who have been called may receive the promise of the eternal inheritance.’***

Yahshua’s Passover during the night that He was betrayed constitutes the new covenant in His blood as we read in 1 Corinthians 11: 23-26 (verse 23 and 24 not quoted here): ***‘In the same way He took the cup also, after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this as often as you drink it in remembrance of Me.” For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim Yahshua’s death until He comes.’*** As the Non-Jewish part of Israel, most of us were in the wilderness of false doctrines for almost 2000 years since Yahshua our Messiah became our Passover lamb. We have over the past decade (some for three to four decades) returned to the way (Halacha) of YHVH the Elohim of all Israel. We started keeping the Torah teachings of YHVH; by observing the Sabbath, the clean and unclean food laws and the Set-apart Days of YHVH our Elohim.

When the Israelites came out of the wilderness they were circumcised, before partaking of the Passover, as we read in Joshua 5: 3 – 5 and 10: ***‘So Joshua made himself flint knives and circumcised the sons of Israel at Gibeath-haaraloth (the hill of foreskins). And this is the reason why Joshua circumcised them: all the people who came out of Egypt who were males, all the men of war, died in the wilderness along the way, after they came out of Egypt. For all the people who came out were circumcised, but all the people who were born in the wilderness along the way as they came out of Egypt had not been circumcised.’*** (10) ***‘While the sons of Israel camped at Gilgal, they observed the Passover on the evening of the fourteenth day of the month on the desert plains of Jericho.’***

It is at this time also required that we return to the rest of the Torah teachings of YHVH our Elohim: and according to Torah (the entire Scriptures) both be circumcised in heart and flesh (in preferably that order, for Gentile believers), to partake of Yahshua’s Passover - the annual memorial of His death. Jewish believers need to be immersed in Yahshua’s saving Name and to learn to observe all that Yahshua commanded His disciples (see Rav Shaul’s example on page four of this sermon).

Chapter 10: Haughtiness, Deception and Lack of Faith.

The biggest problem facing our world today starts with each one of us individually. We are so self-centered and proud that we consider ourselves better than most other people. For this reason we judge our fellow human beings, all day long: They drive like fools; they waste our money; they burn the food; they are lazy, etc, etc. Yet we read in James 4: 11 & 12 that we should not do so: ***'Do not speak against one another, brethren. He who speaks against a brother, or judges his brother, speaks against the law, and judges the law; but if you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law, but a judge of it. There is only one Lawgiver and Judge, the One who is able to save and to destroy; but who are you who judge your neighbor?'***

We even judge our Father in heaven: It is too hot; it is too cold; it is so dry; or we get too much rain. We are always complaining. We judge the people that YHVH has called. We even judge those which YHVH has not called at this time. Most of the people who judge our Father YHVH as being a strict old Judge who demands back whatever (talents) He gave them, will be judged in exactly that way! An example of this may be seen in Matthew 25: 18 and 24 to 28 which reads as follows: ***"But he who received the one talent went away and dug in the ground, and hid his master's money. And the one also who had received the one talent came up and said, 'Master I knew you to be a hard man, reaping where you scattered no seed. And I was afraid, and went away and hid your talent in the ground; see, you have what is yours.' "But his master answered and said to him, 'You wicked lazy slave, you knew that I reap where I did not sow, and gather where I scattered no seed. 'Then you ought to have put my money in the bank, and on my arrival I would have received my money back with interest. 'Therefore take away the talent from him, and give it to the one who has the ten talents.'*** YHVH like most parents wants us to see Him as the loving Father that He is.

He would like us to take time out, to get to know Him better. But most of all, He wants us to prove for ourselves that He Exists. We read in Deuteronomy 4: 29 as follows: ***“But from there you will seek YHVH your Elohim, and you will find Him if you search for Him with all your heart and all your soul.”*** He wants us to find Him in The Scriptures, by studying it for ourselves. Most people go to Sabbath or even Sunday services to be taught by other people. I am not saying that, that is wrong. We need teachers to teach us the basics, for correction, to reprove us when necessary and for training in righteousness. However, our Father wants us to check out what we have learnt from these teachers, to see whether the things they taught us are indeed so.

We've read in Deuteronomy 4: 29, that we will find YHVH if we seek Him with all our heart and soul. This means intensive studying to prove without any doubt that He is One as He says He is. We find YHVH by studying the scriptures, but also by having our prayers answered. Have you had your prayers answered? Do you believe with all your heart that YHVH answered your personal prayers? Have you ever prayed for protection and actually witnessed how YHVH protected you from an accident? I tell you it is quite a fantastic feeling when after an accident occurred and you realize that YHVH actually protected you.

The next step in our walk with YHVH is to prove that The Scriptures are indeed the word of YHVH and that they are true in every respect. Oh Yes there are mistranslations, but despite those, we can actually prove that it is true. An example of this is what Peter wrote in the second epistle: The phrase “stored with fire” illustrates that Peter, although not knowledgeable himself about the atom, accurately described the immense power stored within it, which when split, emits much heat and fire, thus causing the disintegration of matter. Peter writes in 2 Peter 3: 10 – 13 (KJV): ***“But the day of YHVH will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.***

Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and elohimliness. Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of Elohim, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat? Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.”

Here, in what Elohim inspired Peter to reveal to us, we have the explanation of how Elohim will create room for us to live in His New Earth. It is interesting to note that we could not have clearly understood these verses until the age of Einstein, nearly 2000 years after they were inscribed on papyrus. Through our modern understanding of nuclear physics, we can grasp something of Elohim’s description to Peter of the immense heat and fire released when the atom is split. We see it was also encoded by Elohim in the Set-apart Scriptures long ago. Another scripture that proves that The Scriptures is true can be found in the book of Job. In Job 26: 7 we read: ***“He stretches out the north over empty space, And hangs the earth on nothing.”*** Today we know that the North Pole sits on snow and ice and that there are only empty spaces for miles around. We also know that gravity holds the earth in the sky. We see in Hebrews 1: 3 that Yahshua the exact representation of the nature of YHVH upholds all things (including the earth) by the word of His power.

Once we have proven that YHVH exists and that The Scriptures, which include both the old and the new Covenants, are the divinely inspired and the literal Word of YHVH as originally written, then we should study to see what YHVH requires of us. This means we need to find out what YHVH expects of those who want to serve and obey Him. We may read about this in Micah 6: 8 as follows: ***‘He has told you, O man, what is good; And what does YHVH require of you But to do justice, to love kindness, And to walk humbly with your Elohim.’*** A second witness to this is found in Deuteronomy 10: 12 – 13, which reads as follows: ***“And now Israel, what does YHVH your Elohim require from you, but to fear YHVH your***

Elohim, to walk in all His ways and to love Him, and to serve YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, and to keep the commandments of YHVH and His statutes which I am commanding you today for your good?"

YHVH expects us to grow in faith. It is vital that we grow in faith, as it is impossible to have a relationship with our Father YHVH without it. We commence our journey to living a life of faith by asking Elohim for it. We need to keep in regular contact with YHVH our Elohim. Once we have proven scripturally, with two or three witnesses what we ought to do, then He wants us to start doing it. We know from being parents ourselves that we show YHVH our love by keeping His commandments and His statutes, which are all contained in His Torah teachings. It is here where we learn to keep the Sabbath day of YHVH, His Set-apart Feast days listed in Leviticus 23, His food laws in Leviticus 11. However, in this modern world with all its gadgets and conveniences, we have become too haughty: we have become so self-reliant that we do not have to rely on anyone any longer. We earn so much money and are able to provide for all our needs. We own the best cars, houses, furniture, Televisions, Cell Phones, Lap-top computers and gadgets. We eat the best food and do not need anything. We say halfhearted prayers when we go to bed at night, asking for more and more physical things. We have become so overconfident that we do not truly realize where all our blessing come from. However, we do not even consider the fact that anyone of us may die the very next minute.

Reading in James 4 and this time in verses 13 to 17, we see how important it is to stop boasting and to do what we know is right: ***'Come now, you who say, "Today or tomorrow, we shall go to such and such a city, and spend a year there and engage in business and make a profit." Yet you do not know what your life will be like tomorrow. You are just a vapor that appears for a little while and then vanishes away. Instead, you ought to say, "If YHVH will, we shall live and also do this or that." But as it is, you boast in your arrogance; all such boasting is evil. Therefore to one who knows the right thing to do, and does not do it, to him it is sin.'***

On the other hand, some do not believe the Scriptures to be totally true any longer. Many of those who have seen recent movies trying to discredit Yahshua's impalement and resurrection believe these fabricated stories to be true. It has become very difficult to prove what we believe as scriptural facts, to be the only truth, to such people. We all know according to The Scriptures that two or three scriptural witnesses ought to be sufficient evidence of a matter. Nevertheless, because of people doubting the Scriptures, a large number of scriptural witnesses are not seen as enough and such people will rather believe a person who appeals to their intellect. The problem is that if we doubt two or three scriptural witnesses and indeed an abundance of witnesses from Scriptures, we are in fact doubting the word of YHVH. Then, even if we profess to believe in Yahshua, we are denying Him by not believing The Word of YHVH.

We need to be very careful of false prophets. Recently a documentary by Executive Producer James Cameron, which made headline news throughout the world, was released. The documentary is called the "Lost Tomb of Jesus". Jane Root the president and general manager of Discovery channel said "This documentary touches on many sensitive issues." In fact she is quite correct in that it will cause more and more believers in Yahshua to lose their faith. We read about this in 2 Peter 2: 1- 3 ***"But false prophets also arose among the people, just as there will also be false teachers among you, who will secretly introduce destructive heresies, even denying the Master who bought them, bringing swift destruction upon themselves. And many will follow their sensuality, and because of them the way of truth will be maligned; and in their greed they will exploit you with false words; their judgment from long ago is not idle, and their destruction is not asleep."***

We need to get beyond basic beliefs such as: When does the Sabbath begin? Which calendar do we follow? and Did Yahshua partake of the Passover? etc. This is exactly what Rav Shaul

teaches in Hebrews 5: 12 – 14 as follows: ***‘For though by this time you ought to be teachers, you have need again for someone to teach you the elementary principles of the oracles of Elohim, and you have come to need milk and not solid food. For everyone who partakes only of milk is not accustomed to the word of righteousness, for he is a babe. But solid food is for the mature, who because of practice have their senses trained to discern good and evil.’*** We need to practice and have our senses trained by doing our own bible study.

Without self study, we will be tossed to and fro, by every wind of doctrine as we read in Ephesians 4: 14 & 15 as follows: ***‘As a result, we are no longer to be children, tossed here and there by waves, and carried about by every wind of doctrine, by the trickery of men, by craftiness in deceitful scheming; but speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in all aspects into Him, who is the head even Messiah.’*** If we never get to know the Scriptures to back up what we believe, we will never be strong enough to withstand false teachers who make statements without backing it up by two or three scriptural witnesses, or by misquoting parts of Scripture as to lead many of us astray.

Brethren, the question is: Do we lack faith In YHVH and His word or are we so arrogant and self-centered that we no longer believe the Word of Elohim? Do we rather trust deceivers like James Cameron and others, before we believe what Yahshua taught? This is exactly what Satan and His agents want from us. They want us to lose our faith in the one True Elohim and believe in deceivers like Satan and his ministers. This is why we read what Yahshua said in Luke 18: 8 the last part: ***“However, when the Son of Man comes, will He find faith on the earth?”***

Let us determine not to lose our faith, by getting to know YHVH and His word much better – so that we may not be so easily deceived and be able to back up whatever we believe with Scriptural evidence alone.

Chapter 11: More deception.

The deception that we read about in Revelation 12: 9 has already happened, and is likely to continue happening until the return of our Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah. Most of the people of the world will continue to be manipulated by Satan in ways that we cannot imagine. He is the father of lies and has been busy trying to derail true worship, from the very beginning.

Sun-worship is one of the areas used by Satan to derail true worship. YHVH delivered Judah up to worship the host of heaven (Acts 7: 42), because they did not remain faithful to the living oracles (Acts 7: 38) which Moses passed on to them. However, as we read in Romans 3: 1 – 4 ***‘Then what advantage has the Jew? Or what is the benefit of circumcision? Great in every respect. First of all that they were entrusted with the oracles of Elohim. What then? If some did not believe, their unbelief will not nullify the faithfulness of Elohim, will it? May it never be! Rather, let Elohim be found true, though every man be found a liar, as it is written, “THAT THOU MIGHTEST BE JUSTIFIED IN THY WORDS, AND MIGHTEST PREVAIL WHEN THOU ART JUDGED.”*** This tells us that even if some of the Jews did not believe. Their unbelief will not nullify the faithfulness of Elohim. They will retain the Oracles of YHVH until Yahshua comes to rule the world from Jerusalem. Christianity, who was never given the Oracles, has similarly neglected the Words of Elohim, and has also for the past 2000 years been worshipping the host of heaven.

Examining most good dictionaries will reveal the following about Sunday: Sunday is the first day of the week; in ancient times it was the day on which the sun was worshiped. In the early days of the church, Christians began to observe the first day of the week in honor of the Resurrection in addition to keeping the seventh-day Sabbath of the Decalogue (Ten Commandments). Gradually the seventh-day Sabbath was abandoned and the first day adopted, though without any Biblical authority, as the Christian rest day. The first Sunday law was that of Constantine the Great A.D. 321. It is evident from history that Sunday was

taken from pagan worship and added to the traditions of Christianity. This action allowed heathen converts to Christianity, to still keep to their pagan belief of sun-worship.

In addition to introducing sun-worshipping to the church, Constantine the Great also adopted the 25th day of December, the birthday of the Sun-god, as the anniversary of the so-called birthday of 'Christ'. Mithraism was the largest pagan cult which celebrated the 'Nativity of the Sun' on the 25th of December. The Mithraists also kept Sunday as well as the 25th of December as the birthday of the Sun. The Xmas tree is another way in which people unknowingly worship the hosts of heaven. The balls on the tree represent the planets and the decking of gold and silver tinsel represents the Milky Way.

At this point I would like to get back to the Resurrection of Yahshua the Messiah and examine if Christianity is correct about their assertion that it occurred on a Sunday morning. We know that YHVH our Elohim created a day to commence with darkness, followed by light; and that He called the light day, and the darkness He called night. And there was evening and there was morning, one day (see Genesis 1: 5). A new day according to The Scriptures therefore begins with evening, followed by morning. This ends at sun-set, when another new day commences.

We know that when a Hebrew (or Jew) refers to a day in The Scriptures, it always includes both night and day. An example of this may be read in the book of Esther 4: 16, as follows: ***“Go assemble all the Jews who are found in Susa, and fast for me; do not eat or drink for three days, night or day.”*** This agrees totally with how YHVH instructed Moses to proclaim the fast on the Day of Atonement. We read this in Leviticus 23: 27 & 32 ***“On exactly the tenth day of this seventh month is the Day of Atonement; it shall be a Set-apart convocation for you, and you shall humble your souls and present an offering by fire to YHVH. It is to be a Sabbath of complete rest to you, and you shall humble your souls; on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening until evening you shall***

keep your Sabbath.” We know that this is one of the annual Sabbath’s or Feast Days that YHVH commanded us to observe in Leviticus 23.

The writings of the Nazarenes referred to by Christianity as the New Testament/Covenant is the recorded history of the people of YHVH, who lived strictly according to the Torah. They observed the Sabbath and Set-apart days of YHVH and all the customs recorded in Torah. We read accordingly in Luke 4: 16 about Yahshua as follows: **‘And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath, and stood up to read.’** We see here that Yahshua kept the Sabbath day during His life on earth.

However, did He abolish the Sabbath day with His resurrection? In Matthew 28: 1 in the ‘New American Standard BIBLE’ we read: **‘Now after the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary came to look at the grave.’** The “DuTillet” Hebrew version of Matthew read as follows: **‘Now on the evening of the Shabbat, as it dawned toward the first day of the week, came Miriam the Magdalene and the other Miriam to see the sepulcher.’** Reading on in Matthew 28 we see that after a great earthquake an Angel of YHVH rolled away the stone (which the Roman guards sealed), and sat upon it. The angel told the two Miriam’s that Yahshua who was impaled is not in the grave any longer as He has risen, as He said. It is very clear from these Scriptures that Yahshua was resurrected at the end of the Sabbath, just before the start of the first day of the week, known as Sunday today.

Christianity holds that Yahshua was impaled on a Friday (or the sixth day of the week) and was resurrected on the following Sunday morning – a period of 36 hours in total. The reason for them believing a Sunday morning resurrection is that, as opposed to the Scriptural method of determining a day (explained above), a day according to the Gregorian calendar starts at midnight. They understand ‘after the Sabbath’ quoted in

Matthew 28: 1 to mean, after midnight and 'as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week' to mean, at daybreak on the 1st day of the week, known to them as Sunday. This is because Christianity stopped observing the true Sabbath hundreds of years ago and has also forgotten the Scriptural way of determining time.

Christianity is totally oblivious of the fact that by keeping to the Friday impalement and Sunday resurrection account, they are in fact denying Yahshua's Messiahship. What is the only sign that Yahshua gave the scribes and Pharisees to know that He is indeed whom He claimed to be? In Matthew 12: 38 - 40 we read: ***'Then some of the scribes and Pharisees answered Him, saying, "Teacher (or Rabbi), we want to see a sign from you." But He answered and said to them, "An evil and adulterous generation craves for a sign; and yet no sign shall be given to it but the sign of Jonah the prophet; for just as JONAH WAS THREE DAYS AND THREE NIGHTS IN THE BELLY OF THE SEA MONSTER, so shall 'the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.'*** This adds up to 72 hours, which is twice as much as the Christian church believes

The main reason why Christianity misinterprets The Scriptures is the fact that they keep strictly to the Gregorian calendar as well as the modern day (Roman) method of determining a day, i.e. from midnight to midnight. They also do not any longer like the first Nazarene followers of Yahshua keep the Set-apart Days of YHVH given in Leviticus 23, as they consider it to be for the Jews only. If they kept the Feast Days of YHVH as listed in Leviticus 23 they would have realized that these Feast Days are also known as annual Sabbaths or High Day Sabbaths. Yahshua was impaled on a Wednesday, which was the day of preparation for the Feast of Unleavened Bread kept annually from the 15th to the 21st of Aviv. This is confirmed in John 19: 31 as follows: ***'The Jews therefore, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken***

away. Most translations of The Scriptures include the section in brackets in the above quote. This was not the regular Sabbath, spoken about here but the 1st Day of Unleavened Bread.

Our Savior was put to death on a Wednesday, the day of Passover. He was placed in the tomb just before sunset when Wednesday ended and Thursday commenced. The woman had no time to wrap His body with spices, due to the High Day Sabbath. They kept the 1st Day of Unleavened Bread which started on Wednesday after sunset (the 15th of Aviv). They bought spice on Friday after the Set-apart day for embalming Messiah's body. They rested the next day on the weekly Sabbath, and prior to sun-set, came to see the tomb. This is when as described in Matthew 28; they find that Yahshua was already risen at the end of the weekly Sabbath. This was definitely not a sunrise visit to the tomb.

Most Nazarene Israelites are Torah observant today. They keep the weekly and the annual Sabbath's of YHVH our Elohim, as given in Leviticus 23. However, Satan's deception is continuing even in our community. The very same annual Sabbath which let the Christians misinterpret The Scriptures, also get the Nazarenes to erroneously count the Omer from the Sabbath, between the First and Last day of Unleavened bread. To understand how this misinterpretation occurs, let's turn to Leviticus 23: 7 where we read: ***'On the first day*** (this is talking about Unleavened Bread as seen from verses 5 & 6) ***you shall have a Set-apart convocation; you shall not do any laborious work.*** As pointed out before, this is a day of rest or otherwise known as an annual Sabbath (Leviticus 23 verses 24, 32 and 39 talks about the annual Set-apart days as Sabbaths - KJV). In verse 8 of Leviticus 23 we read that on the seventh day of Unleavened Bread, we shall also have a Set-apart convocation and not do any laborious work. This is also a day of rest or the second annual Sabbath of the year.

Continuing on in verse 9 to 11 of Leviticus 23 YHVH says to Moses: ***"Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, 'When you enter the land, which I am going to give to you and reap***

its harvest, then you shall bring the sheaf of the first fruits of your harvest to the priest. 'And he shall wave the sheaf before YHVH for you to be accepted; on the day after the Sabbath the priest shall wave it. Please note when this is suppose to take place - it clearly specifies, 'When you enter the land which I am going to give you.'

Reading from verse 12 to 14 we see: '***Now on the day when you wave the sheaf, you shall offer a male lamb one year old without defect for a burnt offering to YHVH. Its grain offering shall then be two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil, an offering by fire to YHVH for a soothing aroma, with its libation, a fourth of a hin of wine. Until this same day (when the Priest waved the wave sheaf), until you have brought in the offering of your Elohim, you shall eat neither bread nor roasted grain nor new growth. It is a perpetual statute throughout your generations in all your dwelling places.*** (Note: Verse 14 is the key to understand things).

To determine which point of view is correct, i.e. counting from the day after the weekly Sabbath, or counting from the day after the annual Sabbath? Is it possible to prove which view is correct? Back in Leviticus 23: 10 we read specifically: '***when you enter the land which I am going to give you.***' This tells us that we need to go the book of Joshua to see what happened after the Israelites entered the land which YHVH gave them. We notice in Joshua 5: 3 that Joshua circumcised the sons of Israel. He did this because all the males who came out of Israel were circumcised, but all the men of war died in the wilderness along the way. All the males who were born in the wilderness along the way out of Egypt had not been circumcised. In Joshua 5: 10 & 11 we read: '***While the sons of Israel camped at Gilgal, they observed the Passover on the evening of the fourteenth day of the month on the desert plains of Jericho. And on the day after the Passover, on the very day, they ate some of the produce of the land, unleavened cakes and parched grain.***' Comparing this with Leviticus 23: 14 where we read: '***until you have brought in the offering of your Elohim, you shall eat neither bread nor roasted grain nor new growth.***' Israel was

forbidden to eat grain or corn until the Omer is harvested and waved by the priest. If the day after the weekly Sabbath is where we count the Omer from and Sunday is always the day on which the Feast of First Fruits is to be kept, then Joshua sinned and caused the whole house of Israel to sin with him, as he allowed them to eat grain and the produce of the land the day after Passover.

Joshua 5 shows that the passing of the Passover allowed Israel to eat grain and not the passing of the alleged weekly Sabbath. Fixed Sunday-to-Sunday (First Fruits to Pentecost) counting is a direct contradiction of Joshua chapter 5: 10 – 12. We see that the grain was eaten on the night of the 15th becoming the 16th Aviv. The expression ‘the day after the Sabbath’ in Leviticus 23 has been misunderstood as meaning that the first fruit sheaf was always to be made on the day following the Sabbath. This view was adopted by the Sadducees (Karaites today), certain Nazarene Israelites and Messianic Jews. However, it is clear from the above that the first annual Sabbath day (the 1st day of Unleavened Bread) was meant as may be seen in Joshua 5: 11. We have also seen that the Set-apart days of YHVH are sometimes referred to as annual Sabbaths (as recorded in Leviticus 23: 24, 32 and 39). In addition we see in Acts 2: 1 ***‘And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.’*** This tells us that there was agreement about the timing of Pentecost amongst the first Nazarene Israelites even after Yahshua’s ascension, and that nobody argued about the calendar like we do today.

How long are some going to insist that Pentecost should always be on a Sunday? Are we prepared to admit that Satan is even today busy deceiving our people to worship the sun? O yes Pentecost (the Feast of First Fruits) may occur on a Sunday, but only once in seven years. (Yahshua was the First Fruit among many brethren. If we make it into the Kingdom of Elohim, we will be first fruits).

Chapter 12: The Restoration of all Israel.

Christianity has taught for almost two centuries that the Church has replaced Israel as the chosen nation of Elohim. They teach that the Christians have taken over Israel's mission to the world. In the same way all the prophetic texts which promise the full and complete restoration of all twelve tribes of Israel to the Land have been allegorized and applied to the Christian Church. However, the Hebrew prophets knew of no such shift in the original plan and promise to Abraham. It is therefore necessary for all who take Scriptural prophesy seriously, to reject all forms of replacement theology.

Throughout the ages many sincere Jews understood that the House of Israel and subsequently the House of Judah went into exile, because of their sinful ways and YHVH hid His face from the united Israel. We may read about the warning that YHVH gave His people Israel in Deuteronomy 31: 17 – 18 ***“Then My anger will be kindled against them in that day, and I will forsake them and hide My face from them, and they will say in that day, ‘Is it not because our Elohim is not among us that these evils have come upon us?’ “But I will surely hide My face in that day because of all the evil which they will do, for they will turn to other gods.”*** In Micah we see a second witness to this in Chapter 3: 4 as follows: ***‘Then they will cry out to YHVH, But He will not answer them. Instead, He will hide His face from them at that time, Because they have practiced evil deeds.’*** Nevertheless, we see in the Scriptures that this ‘Face Hiding’ of YHVH is neither the replacement nor rejection of His people Israel.

Our Father's reason for this exile is to organize the full restoration of Israel. When Moses mentioned the exile first in Deuteronomy 4: 30 – 31, he incorporates a promise of restoration: ***“When you are in distress and all these things have come upon you, in the latter days, you will return to YHVH your Elohim, and you will find Him if you search for Him with all your heart and all your soul. When you are in distress and all these things have come upon you, in the***

latter days, you will return to YHVH your Elohim and listen to His voice.” In Deuteronomy 30: 3 – 6 we read: ***‘Then YHVH your Elohim will restore you from captivity, and have compassion on you, and will gather you again from all the peoples where YHVH your Elohim have scattered you.’ “If your outcasts are at the ends of the earth, from there YHVH your Elohim will gather you and from there He will bring you back. And YHVH your Elohim will bring you into the land which your father’s possessed, and you shall possess it; and He will prosper you and multiply you more than your fathers. Moreover YHVH your Elohim will circumcise your hearts and the hearts of your descendants, to love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, in order that you may live.”***

The promises of restoration are made to both the Houses of Israel. Most of us are aware that the Jews of today are not the only Israelites to be found on this earth. YHVH told our common forefather Abram that he will be the father of a multitude of nations and changed his name to Abraham, which means exactly that, i.e. ‘father of a multitude’. To ratify the covenant YHVH made with Abraham, it was agreed that Abraham and his descendants after him, throughout their generations would be circumcised. In Gen.17: 18 - 21 YHVH tells Abraham that He will not establish His covenant with Ishmael, the son of Hagar, but with Isaac, the son of Sarah. This leads to the fact that Israel became and still is the chosen race of YHVH. However, the Scriptures bear witness to the fact that the nation of Israel split into two separate nations because of the sins of King Solomon. The resultant Kingdom of Judah kept close to YHVH, but its sister nation the Kingdom of Israel started keeping different feast days, immediately after the split. They became like gentiles and were taken into captivity around 721 B.C.E., because of their idolatrous ways. The Assyrians took them out of Samaria and settled another people in their place. Samaria was the Capital of the ten tribes of Israel. Eventually the ten tribes were taken northwest into Europe, where some settled. The rest moved on into England and further on to the USA, Canada, Australia, South Africa and New Zealand.

The seed of the Israelites were spread throughout the world and can be found amongst virtually every nation in the world. The children of Abraham have indeed become a multitude of nations. However, they lost their identity because they forgot the commandments of YHVH and started keeping pagan holidays such as the day of the sun, Xmas and Easter, like the pagan nations amongst whom they lived. They are no longer the people of YHVH and do not know His name - another sign of the true people of YHVH. See the first part of Isaiah 52: 6 ***"Therefore My people shall know My name."*** Even though some know that Yahshua or Jesus as they know the Messiah died for their sins, they do not know His real name. They do not know that they are Israelites who need to keep the Torah commands of YHVH. In addition they worship a three-headed Almighty called God. This deception is Satan's way to keep these Israelites from knowing their ultimate human potential - to become sons of Elohim.

The restoration of all Israel is based upon the unqualified promise of YHVH. Even though the House of Israel is scattered throughout the world and think of themselves as Gentiles, not a 'least grain' will be lost. In Hosea 1 we see that Hosea's wife bore him a child named Jezreel. Jezreel stands for Yisre'el, meaning Elohim sows in Hebrew. The word Yisre'el is very similar to Yisrael (Hebrew for Israel) with the prophetic meaning, as seen in chapter 2 of Hosea that Elohim is about to scatter or sow the House of Israel amongst the nations as punishment for their sins. We see that this punishment is specifically for the House of Israel, whilst YHVH will have compassion on the House of Judah, as recorded in Hosea 1: 7 as Follows: ***"But I will have compassion on the house of Judah and deliver them by YHVH their Elohim, and will not deliver them by bow, sword, battle, horses and horsemen."***

The House of Judah consists of the majority of the Jewish People alive today. We know that there are only about 14 million Jews around the world today. They retained their identity, because they remained faithful to Torah for the past 2500 years. As mentioned before, the house of Israel consisting of ten tribes was carried away in captivity by Assyria around 721 B.C.E. They

never returned (in great numbers) to rejoin their brothers Judah. It was during the time of their scattering amongst the nations that Hosea tells us that these Israelites would lose their identity. Hosea's second and third children were named Lo-ruchama (meaning not-pitied) and lo-ammi (meaning not My People). This essentially meant that during their captivity amongst the nations, they would not receive the pity from YHVH and that they would no longer be known as the people of YHVH. Even though the Jews were also dispersed through the nations, they have always retained a relationship with YHVH their Elohim and have known who they are.

Fortunately YHVH does not want to leave the house of Israel scattered amongst the nations of the world. We also see that Hosea prophesied that at the time when the number of the descendants of Israel will be as 'the sand of the sea', this immeasurable group who used to be known as 'not My people' will again come to be known as 'sons of the Living El.' This means that they will regain their identity – they will realize that they are not Gentiles, but belong to the so called 'lost ten tribes of Israel.' We have seen this prophesy about this bringing back of the lost tribes of Israel, in Deuteronomy 30: 3 – 6. A second witness to this is found in Leviticus 26: 40 - 45.

In Jeremiah 31: 10 we see that YHVH says that: ***“He who scattered Israel will gather him.”*** In verse 27 and 28 we read: ***“Behold, days are coming,” declares YHVH, “when I will sow the house of Israel and the house of Judah with the seed of man and with the seed of beast. And it will come about that as I have watched over them to pluck up, to break down, to overthrow, to destroy, and to bring disaster, so I will watch over them to build and to plant,” declares YHVH.*** This is not only talking about the re-gathering of the house of Judah to the Land, but of joining the house of Judah with the whole house of Israel.

Let us now consider a few scriptures which confirm the above and also tells us what lies ahead for us who now know that we are part and parcel of the lost ten tribes of Israel:

- In Isaiah 11: 11-12 we read: ***'Then it will happen on that day that YHVH Will again recover the second time with His hand The remnant of His people, who will remain, From Assyria, Egypt, Pathros, Cush, Elam, Shinar, Hamath, And from the coastlands of the sea. And He will lift up a standard for the nations, And will assemble the banished ones of Israel, And will gather the dispersed of Judah From the four corners of the earth.'*** This full gathering seems to come with the appearance of the standard (or Messiah), but many scriptures show that the initial stages of the reunion begin earlier in less spectacular ways.
- In Jeremiah 3: 6 -18 we read: ***'Then YHVH said to me in the days of Josiah the king, "have you seen what faithless Israel did? She went on every high hill and under every green tree and she was a harlot there. And I thought, 'After she has done all these things, she will return to Me'; but she did not return, and her treacherous sister Judah saw it. And I saw that for all the adulteries of faithless Israel, I had sent her away and given her a writ of divorce, yet her treacherous sister Judah did not fear, but she went and was a harlot also. And yet it came about because of the lightness of her harlotry, that she polluted the land and committed adultery with stones and trees. And in spite of all this her treacherous sister Judah did not return to Me with all her heart, but rather in deception.'*** Declares YHVH. And YHVH said to me, ***'Faithless Israel has proved herself more righteous than treacherous Judah. Go and proclaim these words toward the north and say, 'Return, faithless Israel,' declares YHVH; I will not look upon you in anger, For I am gracious,' declares YHVH; 'I will not be angry forever. Only acknowledge your iniquity That you have transgressed against YHVH your Elohim And have scattered your favors to the strangers under***

every green tree, And you have not obeyed My voice.’ Declares YHVH. Return, O faithless sons, declares YHVH; ‘For I am a master to you, And I will take you one from a city and two from a family, And will bring you to Zion.’ “Then I will give you shepherds after My own heart, who will feed you on knowledge and understanding. And it shall be in those days when you are multiplied and increased in the land,” declares YHVH, “they shall say no more, ‘The ark of the covenant of YHVH.’ And it shall not come to mind, nor shall they miss it, nor shall it be made again. At that time they shall call Jerusalem ‘The Throne of YHVH.’ and all the nations will be gathered to it, to Jerusalem, for the name of YHVH; nor shall they walk anymore after the stubbornness of their evil heart. In those days the house of Judah will walk with the house of Israel, and they will come together from the land of the north to the land that I gave your fathers as an inheritance.” Judah has already gone back to the land and we see more and more Jews returning to the land. Both houses will eventually return, to be associated again with a Davidic king. This great return will rival the Exodus from Egypt, when the new covenant will come about with the restoration of all Israel. We read about this in Jeremiah 23: 3 - 6 as follows: **‘Then I Myself shall gather the remnant of My flock out of all the countries where I have driven them and shall bring them back to their pasture; and they will be fruitful and multiply. I shall also raise up shepherds over them and they will tend them; and they will not be afraid any longer, nor be terrified, nor will any be missing,’ declares YHVH. “Behold the days are coming.” Declares YHVH, ‘When I shall raise up for David a righteous branch; And He will reign as king and act wisely And do justice and righteousness in the land. In His days Judah will be saved, And Israel will dwell securely; And this is His name by which he will be called; ‘YHVH our righteousness.’”**

- In Amos 9: 8 – 10 Israel lose contact with Elohim and are scattered, but in verses 11 and 12, their return is again linked with a restoration of a Davidic kingdom. The apostles understood these scriptures and immediately prior to Messiah ascended to heaven, they asked Him in the last part of Acts 1: 6 as follows: ***“Master is it at this time You are restoring the kingdom to Israel?”***
- In Zechariah 8: 13 we read: ***‘And it will come about that just as you were a curse among the nations, O house of Judah and house of Israel, so I will save you that you may become a blessing. Do not fear; let your hands be strong.’*** If some of us are concerned for our children at this time, it is comforting to read Zechariah 10: 9 & 10 as follows: ***“When I scatter them among the peoples, They will remember Me in far countries, And they with their children will live and come back. I will bring them back from the land of Egypt, And gather them from Assyria; And I will bring them into the land of Gilead and Lebanon, Until no room can be found for them.”***

My fellow believers this is wonderful news and it seems that YHVH is calling us back to return to Torah in our generation. He is calling hundreds of Israelites who previously thought that they were Gentiles and have only known their G-d through the watered down paganized faith known as Christianity, to return to Him. If we heed His call, then He will restore us together with Judah to be His United Israel again. However, we will have to return fully to Torah to start this walk with our Father YHVH: We will have to keep the weekly and annual Sabbaths; eat Kosher; believe that YHVH is One and only One; call on His Name and be circumcised in both heart and flesh. From the scriptures that we read above, I am positive that this is the will of our Father in Heaven. Let us do our small part in restoring the two Houses of Israel, which we know will come about fully, when YHVH will soon usher in the coming Kingdom of Elohim! HalleluYah!

Chapter 13: The Temple of Elohim.

The prophet Ezekiel has given us an unbelievable vision of the Glory of Elohim (the Shekinah) sitting on His throne, between the Cherubim (a higher class of angel), in the first chapter of the book of Ezekiel. The Jewish Sages called this vision of the throne of YHVH, 'The Chariot' or HaMerkavah, since it is a vision of the throne being moved by the angels called 'wheels'. In chapter 10 of Ezekiel we see the meaning of the vision in verses 18 & 19 as follows: ***'Then the glory of YHVH departed from the threshold of the temple and stood over the cherubim. When the cherubim departed, they lifted their wings and rose up from the earth in my sight with the wheels beside them; and they stood still at the entrance of the east gate of Elohim's house. And the glory of the Elohim of Israel hovered over them.'***

We know that when YHVH gave the Torah to Israel through Moses on Mount Sinai, He came to dwell amongst His people Israel. The dwelling place of YHVH our Elohim moved from its place in heaven to the Tabernacle. Then again in Ezekiel we see that the Glory of Elohim moves from its dwelling place in the Temple in Jerusalem. The Ark of the Covenant, which was the dwelling place of Elohim, was never recovered for the Second Temple. The Shekinah presence of YHVH never filled the second Temple in Jerusalem, as it did the first Temple. However, in the book of Acts, in chapter 2, we see an extraordinary thing occurring on the day of Pentecost. The believers in Yahshua were gathered in the second Temple, and in the same way as the fire and wind that appeared at Mount Sinai and in Ezekiel's vision, The Presence of Elohim returned to the Temple to take up residence. But instead of entering the Holy of Holies as in the first Temple, He takes up residence in the bodies of the believers present on the day of Pentecost.

The message was clear. The first century believers have become the Temple of Elohim. In 1 Corinthians 3: 16 & 17 Rav Shaul explains it as follows: ***'Do you not know that you are a temple of Elohim, and that the Spirit of Elohim dwells in***

you? If any man destroys the Temple of Elohim, Elohim will destroy him, for the temple of Elohim is Set-apart, and that is what you are.' In 1 Corinthians 6: 19 & 20 Rav Shaul therefore admonish us, as follows: ***'Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Set-apart Spirit who is in you, whom you have from Elohim, and that you are not your own? For you have been bought with a price: therefore glorify Elohim in your body.'***

We read a marvelous prophesy about what is busy happening before our very eyes today in Jeremiah 3: 14 – 16, as follows: ***'Return, O faithless sons,' declares YHVH; 'For I am a master to you, And I will take you one from a city and two from a family, And will bring you to Zion.'*** (15) ***"Then I will give you shepherds after My own heart, who will feed you on knowledge and understanding. (16) And it shall be in those days when you are multiplied and increased in the land," declares YHVH, "they shall say no more, 'The ark of the covenant of YHVH.' And it shall not come to mind, nor shall they remember it, nor shall they miss it, nor shall it be made again."***

YHVH is calling out a people today, who will obey Him fully. We are to be the first fruits of His creatures, as we read in James 1: 18 ***'In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.'*** We further read John 14: 15 & 16 Yahshua said: ***"If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Helper, that He may be with you forever."*** It is clear that we are the Temple of Elohim today and it is for that reason necessary for us to ensure that we clean out the Temple on a regular basis. If you can recall, whilst the Shekinah of YHVH lived in the Holy of Holies inside the Tabernacle in the wilderness, the Priest went inside once a year on the day of Atonement, to make atonement for the sins of the people. The sins were 'covered' by the sacrifice that the Priest made on that day. We read therefore in Hebrews 9: 13 & 14 as follows: ***'For if the blood of goats and bulls and the ashes of a heifer***

sprinkling those who have been defiled, sanctify for the cleansing of the flesh, how much more will the blood of Messiah, who through the eternal Spirit offered up Himself without blemish to Elohim, cleanse your conscience from dead works to serve the living Elohim?’

Many so-called believers bandy about some key phrases today. We see in a TV advertisement Desmond Tutu saying: ‘All I have to do is believe.’ The question is: believe what? The newly appointed leader of the Dutch Reformed Synod said the other morning on the radio: ‘That by practicing righteousness, we are able to resist Satan.’ I agree totally with him on this score. However, this immediately raises the question: What does he mean by righteousness? We know that they (The Dutch Reformed Church) are now allowing so-called ‘non-practicing’ homosexuals to become ministers in their church. They like other Christian Churches, believe (and correctly so) that Yahshua (the one they call Jesus) died to redeem us from our sin. However, they also believe that He nailed the Law to the cross. We know that this is an incorrect interpretation of Colossians 2: 13 & 14 which reads correctly as follows: ***‘And when you were dead in your transgressions and the un-circumcision of your flesh, He made you alive together with Him, having forgiven us all our transgressions, having cancelled our certificate of debt consisting of decrees against us and which was hostile to us; and He has taken it out of the way, having nailed it to the cross.’*** It is clear from this that Yahshua nailed the certificate of our debt and not the Torah to the cross. The remaining problem is that because Christianity believes that their ‘Christ’ has ‘abolished’ the Torah, they have no idea what sin is. We know that sin is the transgression of the Law as we read in 1 John 3: 4 as follows: ***‘Everyone who practices sin also practices lawlessness; and sin is lawlessness.’***

According to this passage of the Scripture, and if what Christianity teaches about Jesus is true, i.e. that he has done away with the Law; then he must have introduced sin. However, we know that that is totally untrue, as Yahshua was the embodiment of Torah and would not do away with Himself – the

Law or Torah of YHVH. In addition the Scriptures tell us that it is through obedience to the Torah of YHVH, that we show our love to Him, as is recorded in 1 John 5: 3: ***“For this is the love of Elohim, that we keep His commandments. And His commandments are not burdensome.”***

In Romans 3: 23 we read: ***‘for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of YHVH.’*** Since we have all sinned, we have all defiled the Temple of Elohim. In Romans 8: 6 - 9 we read: ***‘For the mind set on the flesh is death, but the mind set on the Spirit is life and peace, because the mind set on the flesh is hostile toward Elohim; for it does not subject itself to the Law of Elohim, for it is not able to do so; and those who are in the flesh cannot please Elohim. However, you are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed the Spirit of Elohim dwells in you. But if anyone does not have the Spirit of Messiah, he does not belong to Him.’*** It is therefore evident that we all have something to do if we want to be saved and if we want to be the Temple acceptable for Elohim’s Spirit to dwell in. We know that Rav Shaul said that each one of us have to work out our own salvation with fear and trembling.

The question is: How do we do that? We see the answer given to the crowd who asked Peter and the other apostles what they should do in Acts 2: 38, as follows: ***‘And Peter said to them, “Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Ruach HaKodesh.”*** Immersion symbolizes our death and burial in a watery grave with Yahshua, and then we are again resurrected with Him as a new person cleansed from our passed sins, by the blood of Messiah. This is confirmed for us in Romans 6: 3 – 5 as follows: ***‘Or do you not know that all of us who have been immersed into Messiah Yahshua have been immersed into His death? Therefore we have been buried with Him through immersion into death, in order that as Messiah was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, so we too might walk in newness of life. For if we have become united with Him in the likeness of His***

death, certainly we shall be also in the likeness of His resurrection.'

However, this is only the starting point. We are not only to repent of past sins, but we must commence to live a life free from sin. In Romans 6: 12 – 14, we read: ***'Therefore do not let sin reign in your mortal body that you should obey its lusts, and do not go on presenting the members of your body to sin as instruments of unrighteousness; but present yourselves to Elohim as those alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness to Elohim. For sin shall not be master over you, for you are not under law, but under grace.'*** We know that this portion of the Scriptures is frequently quoted by Christian teachers, who teach against the keeping of the commandments. However, what did Rav Shaul mean with these Scriptures? He simply meant that we are being forgiven of our past sins and are not under the penalty of the Law any longer. We do not have to be put to death for our past sins, as Yahshua already paid the death penalty for our sins. Once we repent and accept that the blood of Yahshua atoned for our sins, we are forgiven and the death penalty is nailed to the tree.

We have read before in Romans 3: 23 that we have all sinned and come short of the glory of YHVH. However, as explained above and recorded for us in Romans 6: 23 ***'For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of Elohim is eternal life in Messiah Yahshua our Master.'*** Without having the Spirit of Elohim indwelling us we cannot inherit the Kingdom of Elohim. We also cannot clean up our minds unless we have the Spirit of YHVH to help us. It is also true that we cannot receive the Ruach HaKodesh until we repent. It is therefore important for each one of us to clean up our minds and bodies, the Temple of Elohim, by repenting and returning to Torah. We need to stay close to YHVH and if we ask Him on a continuous basis to give us more of His Set-apart Spirit, His Spirit will lead us into all truth. As the Ruach HaKodesh shows us more truth (we know that Torah is truth), we are required to respond by changing our lives and return to Torah. If we are shown by the Ruach that we need to change, and we make the required changes (and refrain from

breaking Torah), YHVH will lead us into more truth. We are only responsible for what we know, but as we are lead into more truth, we are required to correct our previously incorrect actions and return to full Torah observance.

If we submit to YHVH and Yahshua; if we clean up our minds from our evil thinking and ways and if we study His word on a regular basis, then He will reveal more and more truths to us, provided that we are prepared to make the changes required in our lives and follow Him. We are what we think and what we consume physically and spiritually. If we eat unclean physical food then we are unclean. We see in Leviticus 11 what foods are clean and what are unclean. We also read in verse 45 of Leviticus 11: ***'For I am YHVH, who brought you up from the land of Egypt*** (Egypt is likened unto sin, so in our case it means YHVH brought us out from our sin), ***to be your Elohim; thus you shall be holy for I am holy.***' The same applies if we fill our minds with violent and filthy literature, movies and TV programs, we will be influenced adversely spiritually. We also need to ensure that our language is kosher: as the people of YHVH we must not use hurtful or filthy language; we should also refrain from 'evil talk' (Lashon Hara in Hebrew) - meaning that we should not be tale bearers. We need to care for our children's diet as far as both the food that they eat and the movies, books and TV programs that they are allowed to watch.

YHVH has given us our bodies and minds to glorify Him. In Matthew 5: 16 we read: ***"Let your light shine before men in such a way that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in heaven."*** We are also responsible for our own families, as we read in 1 Timothy 5: 8, as follows: ***'But if anyone does not provide for his own, and especially for those of his own household, he has denied the faith, and is worse than an unbeliever.'*** We need to uphold our part of the covenant that we made with YHVH at immersion as we read in 1 Corinthians 6: 20 ***'For you have been bought with a price: therefore glorify Elohim in your body.'***

Chapter 14: Do you believe in Yahshua our Jewish Messiah?

Christianity believes in the savior we call Yahshua. We believe that He is the visible image of the invisible Elohim. They believe that He is one of three gods in the trinity. They changed His name to Jesus – because they say that is how He is known in the western world. The original followers of Yahshua were called a Sect of the Pharisees, known as the Nazarenes. We read about them in Acts 24: 5, 14 & 15 ***“For we have found this man a real pest and a fellow who stirs up dissension among all the Jews throughout the world, and a ringleader of the sect of the Nazarenes. (14 & 15) But this I admit to you, that according to the Way which they call a sect I do serve the Elohim of our fathers, believing everything that is in accordance with the Law, and that is written in the Prophets; having a hope in Elohim, which these man cherish themselves, that there shall certainly be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked.”***

In Acts 8 we see the start of another religion by Simon Magus a person who wanted to buy the Ruach HaKodesh from the apostle Peter. We read about this in verses 18 - 20 (of Acts 8), as follows: ***‘Now when Simon saw that the Spirit was bestowed through the laying on of the apostles’ hands, he offered them money, (19) saying, “Give this authority to me as well, so that everyone on whom I lay my hands may receive the Set-apart Spirit.” (20) ‘But Peter said to him, “May your silver perish with you, because you thought you could obtain the gift of Elohim with money!”*** Simon Magus was the father of the counterfeit religion known as Christianity today. As we know, they follow a Jesus who came to do away with His Father’s laws. The movement which began with Yahshua the Jew is still composed of a small group of people who keep the commandments of Elohim and have faith in Him (Yahshua). However, Christianity has grown to include every tribe and nation on the earth. The Christian faith has crossed over every cultural line and social barrier. Within the Christian faith, there are to be no ethnic divisions or racial walls. The Christians believe in a Christ who looks more like your average

westerner and to them he is everything but a Jew. He is portrayed as having long blond hair, with a refined effeminate little nose. Christianity sets their savior Jesus against Judaism. But the anti-Semitic Jesus is not the Scriptural Yahshua. The Messiah who is the center of our Nazarene faith was and is Yahshua a Jew by birth.

He was born of a Jewish mother, into a Jewish family. Like all Jewish sons, He was circumcised on the eighth day. In keeping with Jewish tradition, He was given His Hebrew name on the same day on which He was circumcised. He was named Yahshua: Yahshua means 'Salvation'; He was named Salvation, because as it says in Matthew 1: 21 ***“for it is He who will save His people from their sins.”*** His people are the descendants of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob: the Israelites. We know that the Israelites consist of 12 tribes, one of which is Judah, known as the Jews. Yahshua was raised as a Jew within an Orthodox Jewish community. In accordance with Jewish tradition, He probably had His first hair cut when He was 3 years old. Nazareth of His day was a thoroughly Jewish village (I am told that today it has become an Arab town and it is dangerous for Jews and Christians to enter it). Yahshua kept the festivals and the Sabbath, given in Leviticus 23. He ate only kosher foods, He ate unleavened bread during the Passover season and he fasted on the Day of Atonement.

After His immersion at around age 30, He became a Torah teacher. He taught His Jewish disciples and other people from the Tanach (an acronym for the Torah, Prophets, and Writings), known as the Old Covenant to Christians. His disciples called Him teacher or Rabbi in Hebrew. A first century Rabbi was not like an ordained minister or a clergyman of today. First century Rabbis were not on the payroll of a synagogue, instead they practiced a trade to support their own teaching ministries. For example, Rav Shaul (also known as Paul) chose to be a tent maker rather than to accept donations from his students (or disciples). Other teachers (or Rabbis) like Yahshua, gave themselves full time to the work of studying and teaching their disciples about the coming Kingdom of Elohim. Such Rabbis

relied on donations of the community and his students – we read this in Luke 8: 3, as follows: ***‘and Joanna the wife of Chuza, Herod’s steward, and Susanna, and many others who were contributing to their support out of their private means.’***

Being Jewish, Yahshua taught in local synagogues. In Luke 4: 16 we read about this, as follows: ***‘And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath and stood up and read.’*** Most of Yahshua’s ministry was spent traveling between Galilee and Jerusalem. We see in the first four books of the Brit Chadasha (Renewed Covenant) known as the Gospel or Good News that Yahshua taught in the Temple courts during the Festivals. The Rabbi-Disciple model or method of teaching the Torah and the knowledge of Elohim to the next generation was instituted by Moses, when he taught Joshua. The teachers of each generation were delegated to raise-up disciples and future teachers for the next generation. A first century Rabbi like Yahshua dedicated to teaching the Torah or teachings of Elohim; His purpose was to explain the Torah in practical terms and to convey the knowledge of Elohim to future generations. Although Yahshua’s interpretation of Torah was at times at odds with other Rabbis of His day, He never abrogated the Torah teachings of Elohim.

Yahshua compared himself to a shepherd and Israel to His sheep. We know that where He said that in John 10 from verse 11 on, He was essentially claiming and understood to be saying, to be one with the Father (see verse 30). We know from Psalm 23 that king David wrote in verse 1 that: ***‘YHVH is my shepherd’***. Yahshua was claiming to be the ***‘good shepherd’***, but also saying in verses 17 & 18 (of John 10) that no one is responsible for His death (neither the Jews nor the Gentiles took away His life), as follows: ***“For this reason the Father loves Me, because I lay down My life that I may take it again. No one has taken it away from Me, but I lay it down on My own initiative. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again. This commandment I received from my***

Father.” As He specified in verse 11: **“the good shepherd lays down His life for the sheep.”**

The job functions of a first century Rabbi included raising-up disciples; be careful in his judgments and interpretation of Torah; and building a fence around Torah.

- A Rabbi was to pass his teachings to his students, which were known as his disciples (Talmidim in Hebrew). Without doing this, the knowledge of righteousness would disappear within a short time. The Rabbi raised-up disciples who would later become teachers, to immerse and teach new believers or disciples to observe all that their Master taught and commanded them. This ensured that there will always be people who could teach new generations, and that the Torah would not be lost. Yahshua raised-up many disciples during His ministry of three and a half years. He raised-up the original twelve disciples and many others who were immersed by the apostles after His resurrection and ascension to heaven. This is also the commission that Yahshua gave His Disciples after His resurrection in Matthew 28: 18 – 20: **‘And Yahshua came up and spoke to them, saying, “All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, immersing them in the name (singular) of the Father and the Son and the Set-apart Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”’**
- A Rabbi had to be very careful when giving a judgment regarding Torah, or when he interprets any section of the Scriptures. In Yahshua’s circumstances He had to be extremely careful when interpreting Torah, especially when it came to healing the sick on the Sabbath. We see an example of this in Luke 6: 6 – 11, as follows: **‘And it came about on another Sabbath that He entered the synagogue and was teaching; and there was a man there whose right hand was withered. And the scribes and the Pharisees were watching Him closely, to see if**

He healed on the Sabbath, in order that they might find reason to accuse Him. But He knew what they were thinking, and He said to the man with the withered hand, "Rise and come forward!" And he rose and came forward. And Yahshua said to them, "I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good, or to do harm, to save a life, or to destroy it?" And after looking around at them all, He said to him, "Stretch out your hand!" And he did so; and his hand was restored. But they themselves were filled with rage, and discussed together what they might do to Yahshua.'

- A Rabbi had to erect a 'fence' around the Torah in order to protect his disciples from breaking the commandments, as well as to protect the Torah. An example of this may be found in Matthew 5: 27 & 28, where Yahshua said: ***"You have heard that it was said, 'YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT ADULTERY'; but I say to you, that everyone who looks on a woman to lust for her has committed adultery with her already in his heart."*** As people who teach fellow disciples today, we also teach, that men should never be alone with a woman that is not their wives – even if it is to prevent people from spreading falsehoods about them. A Rabbi was never to give the impression that he was doing away with the Torah teachings of YHVH our Elohim. We also know that Yahshua protected the Torah by stating in Matthew 5: 17 -19: ***"Do not think that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish, but to fulfill (or make it more binding). For truly I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass away from the Law, until all is accomplished. Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments, and so teaches others, shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven."***

From the examples mentioned above, it is clear that Yahshua was fully engaged in His work as a first century Rabbi. He used

the same methods of teachings that the Jewish Rabbi's before him did. Like the Torah teachers before Him, Yahshua used parables to teach His disciples. However, we know that even though Yahshua's method of teaching was similar to His first century contemporaries, He was markedly different from them in the following ways:

- Yahshua taught in His own name, and not like the other Rabbis of His day did. They taught in the name of their teachers and predecessors in order to establish the authority of their teachings. He called upon His Father to confirm His teachings. We see in Matthew 5: 21 that Yahshua merely said: ***“You have heard that the ancients were told, ‘YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT MURDER’ and ‘Whoever commits murder shall be liable to the court.’ “But I say to you that everyone who is angry with his brother shall be guilty before the court; and whoever shall say to his brother, ‘Raca,’ shall be guilty before the supreme court; and whoever shall say, ‘You fool,’ shall be guilty enough to go into the fiery hell.”*** The fact that Yahshua did not invoke other Rabbis before Him showed that He taught with ultimate authority. We read accordingly in Matthew 7: 28 and 29 as follows: ***‘The result was that when Yahshua had finished these words, the multitudes were amazed at His teachings; for He was teaching them as one having authority, and not as their scribes.’***
- Yahshua's message was primarily focused on the coming kingdom of Elohim. Even though other Rabbis did discuss the kingdom of heaven, Yahshua came proclaiming it, as may be seen in Mark 1: 14 &15, ***‘And after John had been taken into custody, Yahshua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of Elohim, and saying, “The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of Elohim is at hand; repent and believe in the gospel.”’***
- Yahshua's teachings were usually accompanied by miracles which validated his claim to be one with the Father. Instead of saying, be healed, Yahshua at times said as in Matthew 9:

2 & 3: ***‘And behold, they were bringing to Him a paralytic, lying on a bed; and Yahshua seeing their faith said to the paralytic, “Take courage, My son, your sins are forgiven.” And behold, some of the scribes said to themselves, “This fellow blasphemes.”*** They said this because they knew that only YHVH, and not any man, is able to forgive sins. Miracles were the norm of Yahshua’s ministry.

Yahshua calls us to be his disciples or students, as He did His first century disciples. He wants us to get to know Him as our Teacher or Rabbi. Yes, He is our Savior, but by studying what He taught His first century disciples, we could also make Him our Master. In order to truly learn from Rabbi Yahshua our Jewish Messiah, we need to commit our lives as disciples under Him and study what He said and did whilst He was on earth, and then follow Him. Believing in Him means that we should believe in what He said. It also means that we should do what He said. We read His admonition about this in Luke 6: 46, as follows: ***“And why do you call Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ and do not do what I say?”*** Think about it!

Chapter 15: What is true Faith?

Even the greatest faith would be worthless, if YHVH our Elohim were not faithful. However, Rav Shaul is telling us in Romans 3: 3 - 6 as follows: ***'What then? If some did not believe, their unbelief will not nullify the faithfulness of Elohim, will it? (4) May it never be! Rather, let Elohim be found true, though every man be found a liar, as it is written, "THAT THOU MIGHTEST BE JUSTIFIED IN THY WORDS, AND MIGHTEST PREVAIL WHEN YHOU ART JUDGED."*** (5) ***But if our unrighteousness demonstrates the righteousness of Elohim, what shall we say? The Elohim who inflicts wrath is not unrighteous is He? (I am speaking in human terms.) (6) May it never be! For otherwise how will Elohim judge the world?'***²²

Having faith means more than believing that YHVH our Elohim exists. It means believing that YHVH intervenes in our lives. We read about this in Hebrews 11: 6 ***'And without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to Elohim must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who seek Him.'*** Life is a journey of faith. We are on our way to the kingdom of Elohim in the world to come. The Israelites journey through the wilderness on their way to the Promised Land is a prime example of how not to do it. They lacked faith despite many miracles on the way. We read about this lack of faith in Hebrews 3: 19, as follows: ***'And so we see that they were not able to enter because of unbelief.'*** The warning to believers is very obvious – we need faith to inherit the kingdom of Elohim. We read further in Hebrews 4: 1 & 2 ***'Therefore, let us fear lest, while a promise remains of entering His rest, any one of you should seem to have come short of it. For indeed we have had good news preached to us, just as they also; but the***

²² In this passage of the Scriptures, Rav Shaul is talking about the faithfulness of Elohim in terms of the fact that the Jews were entrusted with the oracles and even if some of them did not believe, He did not take the oracles away from them, because of their unbelief, since He remains eternally faithful – see Romans 3: 1 & 2.

word they heard did not profit them, because it was not united by faith in those who heard.'

The biggest mistake that the Israelites made was that when they were about to enter the land 40 years prior to actually entering it, their faith disappeared. The Israelites were waiting for the 12 spies from each of the 12 tribes of Israel. Each one of the spies was a leader of their respective tribes. The spies were sent to get an idea of what the land was like. When the spies returned they had very good reports certifying that the land was very lush and fruitful. However, they also reported that there were some problems, in that the inhabitants of the land were very strong and the cities are very well protected and very large. In addition the descendants on Anak (who were giants) were seen, the Hittites, Jebusites and the Amorites are living in the hill country, and the Canaanites are living by the sea and by the side of the Jordan (Numbers 13: 28 & 29). Ten of the twelve spies spread bad reports about the land (Numbers 13: 32). Only two spies, namely Joshua from the tribe of Ephraim and Caleb from the tribe of Judah, gave good reports. Caleb was certain that the Israelites shall easily overcome the problems (see Numbers 13: 30). The Israelites chose to believe the bad reports. They based their decision on what they heard and their faith vanished.

We too base most of our decisions on what we hear and see. In many cases physical evidence tells us that whatever we are trying to do is impossible. Because we are physical, when we survey our environment, we see, smell, hear, taste and feel only the physical reality. We understand things through our five senses and neglect faith, as it is a spiritual element. The remedy to this failing lies in strengthening our spiritual understanding, by studying Elohim's Word and praying to ask for Elohim's Set-apart Spirit to work in our lives. The Scriptures contain many examples of believers who had faith in YHVH and His promises. We should review these examples on a regular basis, so that we may develop our faith, as is recorded in Romans 10: 17, ***'So faith comes from hearing and hearing by the word of Messiah.'***

One such an example may be read in the book of Daniel. In chapter 6 of Daniel we read the account where Daniel's fellow government officials in king Darius' kingdom, became jealous of Daniel. The reason for this was because Daniel possessed an extraordinary spirit, and the king planned to appoint him over the entire kingdom. They tricked the king into signing a decree which outlawed anyone from making a petition to any man or god besides king Darius; else such a person will be thrown into the lion's den. This was a severe test for Daniel, as it was his habit to pray to YHVH three times a day, by an open window facing Jerusalem. This meant that it became unlawful for him to pray to YHVH. However, this did not deter Daniel from praying to YHVH as may be read in the second part of Daniel 6: 10: ***'and he continued kneeling on his knees three times a day, praying and giving thanks before his Elohim, as he had been doing previously.'*** His fellow officials caught him praying and reported him to the king. The king was deeply distressed and he tried saving Daniel. However, the decree was in accordance with the law of the Medes and Persians, meaning that no injunction or statute which the king established may be changed. Daniel was thrown into the lion's den. The den was sealed by a stone, which the king sealed with his own signet ring. However, the king went into his palace, fasting for the night. He could not sleep and went to the lion's den. In verse 20 of Daniel chapter 6 we read; ***'And when he (the king) had come near the den to Daniel, he cried out with a troubled voice. The king spoke and said to Daniel, "Daniel, servant of the living Elohim, has your Elohim, whom you constantly serve, been able to deliver you from the lions?"'***

In verses 21 to 23 we read about the outcome of Daniel's faith, as follows: ***'Then Daniel spoke to the king, "O king, live forever! My Elohim sent His angel and shut the lions' mouths, and they have not harmed me, inasmuch as I was found innocent before Him; and also toward you, O king, I have committed no crime." Then the king was very pleased and gave orders for Daniel to be taken up out of the den, and no injury whatever was found on him, because he had trusted in his Elohim.'*** Daniel's faith in YHVH our Elohim saved

his live. We also read about the faith that saved Daniel's three friends, Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego on a previous occasion. In Daniel 3 we read about the king of Babylon, king Nebuchadnezzar who made an image of gold. He assembled all the rulers of the land and proclaimed that as soon as the people living in the land hear the sound of the horn, flute, lyre, trigon, psaltery, bagpipe, and all kinds of music, they had to fall down and worship the image that the king made. The proclamation also stated that whosoever, does not worship the image will be thrown into a furnace of blazing fire.

We see as the account unfolds that Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego refuse to worship the image that the king made. In verse 19 - 21 of Daniel 3 we see that the king was furious: (19) ***'Then Nebuchadnezzar was filled with wrath, his facial expression was altered toward Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego. He answered by giving orders to heat the furnace seven times more than it was usually heated. (20) And he commanded certain valiant warriors who were in his army to tie up Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, in order to cast them into the furnace of blazing fire. (21) Then these men were tied up in their trousers, their coats, their caps²³ and their clothes, and were cast into the midst of the furnace of blazing fire.'*** We read that because the fire was so extremely hot, it slew the men who threw Shadrach Meshach and Abednego into the fire. However, Daniel's three friends fell into the midst of the furnace, still tied up. The king was astounded when he saw four men walking about in the fire and according to him the fourth had the appearance of ***'a son of the gods!'*** When the king ordered the three men to come out of the fire, he and those with him saw that the fire did not harm the

²³ *These three Hebrew men were in defiance of the Babylonian king. They were thrown into the fire with all their customary clothing on, which included their caps. This confirms that they did not learn to wear head coverings in Babylon, like some believers who insist that men's head coverings come from Babylon. The wearing of caps came from Israel, before these men were taken to Babylon.*

three men at all. In verse 28 of Daniel we see Nebuchadnezzar's response, as follows: ***'Nebuchadnezzar responded and said, "Blessed be the Elohim of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, who has sent His angel and delivered His servants who put their trust in Him, violating the king's command, and yielding up their bodies so as not to serve or worship any god except their own Elohim."***

Again we see that the faith of these men saved their lives. What is faith? We find the answer to this question in Hebrews 11: 1 – 3 ***'Now faith is the assurance of things hoped for, the conviction of things not seen. For by it the men of old gained approval. By faith we understand that the worlds were prepared by the word of Elohim, so that what is seen was not made out of things which are visible.'*** In Malachi 4: 5 & 6 we read about Malachi's prophesy about our work at the end of the age, as follows: ***"Behold I am going to send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and terrible day of YHVH. And he will restore the hearts of the fathers to their children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the land with a curse."*** This is essentially telling us of an end time work (in the spirit of Elijah), which will teach people before the great and terrible day of YHVH, that our El (Elohim) is Yah (YHVH) and also to restore the hearts (the faith) of the fathers (the fathers in the faith – Abraham, Isaac and Jacob - which is belief in Yahshua and Torah*), to the children. O Yes, it is also telling fathers to love their children and become more involved in teaching them truth. It is incumbent upon us as a Nazarene fellowship to perform the job function given us by Malachi, lest YHVH will smite the land (of Israel) with utter destruction.

*Let us at this point consider the faith of those fathers of ours (in the faith). We read about them in Hebrews 11: 8 -10, as follows: ***'By faith Abraham, when he was called, obeyed by going out to a place which he was to receive for an inheritance; and he went out, not knowing where he was going. By faith he lived as an alien in the land of promise, as in a foreign land, dwelling in tents with Isaac and Jacob, fellow heirs of the***

same promise; for he was looking for the city which has foundations, whose architect and builder is Elohim.' This tells us that our fathers in the faith were fully aware of the coming kingdom of Elohim. They believed in the Gospel of Elohim and believed that they will be part of it. My question is: Do we believe the gospel of Elohim as preached by Yahshua? The gospel that Yahshua preached is recoded for us in Mark 1: 14 & 15, as follows: **'And after John had been taken into custody, Yahshua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of Elohim, and saying, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of Elohim is at hand; repent and believe in the gospel."**

Apart from believing the gospel of Elohim, our father Abraham also knew about and believed in the saving work that Yahshua was going to do in what was the future for him. We read part of Yahshua's answer to the Jews in John 8: 56 – 58, as follows: **"Your father Abraham rejoiced to see My day, and he saw it and was glad."** **'The Jews therefore said to Him, "You are not yet fifty years old, and have You seen Abraham?"'** **'Yahshua said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was born, I am."** We know that Yahshua was telling the Jews here that He was the Eternal (I am). He is using the same name used by YHVH to identify Himself to Moses in Exodus 3: 14 & 15. We also know that Abraham believed in the resurrection as may be read in Hebrews 11: 17 – 19 : **'By faith Abraham when he was tested, offered up Isaac; and he who had received the promises was offering up his only begotten son; it was he to whom it was said, "In Isaac your descendants shall be called." He considered that Elohim is able to raise men, even from the dead; from which he also received him back as a type.'**

As we have seen before Abraham knew that Yahshua was going to be impaled and resurrected in what was future to him, he received Isaac back as a type of Yahshua.

Lastly our father Abraham also obeyed YHVH as we see on Genesis 26: 5 **"because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes and My laws."** Nevertheless, we see that Abraham and the other fathers in the

faith have not received what was promised yet. This is recorded in Hebrews 11: 39 & 40, as follows: '**And all these, having gained approval through their faith, did not receive what was promised, because Elohim had provided something better for us, so that apart from us (the first fruits called during this age) they should not be made perfect.**'

To return to the faith of Abraham means that like him we should (believe and) have faith in:-

- The coming kingdom of Elohim and ultimately the New Jerusalem, when YHVH will come and tabernacle with us – He shall dwell among us and we shall be His people.
- Yahshua our Messiah – believing in both His saving name (that His death redeemed us from the second death) and what He taught His disciples whilst He was on earth.
- The 1st resurrection (of those called as first fruits during this age to become kings and priests ruling under Yahshua during His Millennial rule and on into eternity - Yahshua being the first to be raised from the dead) as well as the 2nd resurrection (when those who never heard about Yahshua's saving name, as well as the wicked are raised from the dead. The wicked and those who refuse to accept Yahshua as their master and savior will be burned to become ashes under the feet of the righteous – as is recorded in Malachi 4: 3. The rest will be saved as the second harvest or fruits into the Eternal Kingdom of YHVH our Elohim).
- Obeying YHVH our Elohim, by keeping His teachings or Torah.

Chapter 16: The Order of Melchizedek.

The first fruits for the Kingdom of Elohim will only be a small group of people. They will receive a double portion indicating a bigger responsibility in the Kingdom. They will be changed into spiritual sons and daughters of Elohim and will become kings and priests under Yahshua in the Kingdom of Elohim. They are called from every tribe of the sons of Israel – even those who have lost their identity because they forgot the commandments of YHVH. They are called during this age and are being trained under difficult circumstances to become first fruits. They are kings and priests in training for a heavenly order, as we read in 1 Peter 2: 9 & 10: ***‘But you are A CHOSEN RACE, A royal PRIESTHOOD, A HOLY NATION, A PEOPLE FOR Elohim’s OWN POSSESSION, that you may proclaim the excellencies of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light; for you once were not a people, but now you are THE PEOPLE OF ELOHIM; you had not RECEIVED MERCY, but now you have RECEIVED MERCY.’***

In Galatians 3: 13 & 14 we read that: ***‘Messiah redeemed us from the curse of the Law, having become a curse for us – for it is written, “CURSED IS EVERYONE WHO HANGS ON A TREE” – in order that in Messiah Yahshua the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles (those Israelites who lost their identity and became like gentiles), so that we might receive the promise of Spirit through faith.’*** To those of us who believe on Yahshua, He took away the curses of the Law (on our behalf), but the blessings of the Law are even now available to those who keep the commandments of YHVH. In verses 23 and 24 of Galatians 3 we read: ***‘But before faith came, we were kept in custody under the law, being shut up to the faith which was later to be revealed. Therefore the Law has become our tutor (school master) to lead us to Messiah, that we may be justified by faith (like our father Abraham).’*** The Law has become Messiah – He is the embodiment of Torah. We are no longer under the school master, but we are under Messiah. As it says in verse 7 & 8 of Galatians 4: ***‘Therefore you are no longer a slave, but a son;’***

and if a son, then an heir through Elohim. However at that time, when you did not know Elohim, you were slaves to those which by nature are no elohim.'

We are being built-up as a Spiritual House for a Set-apart Priesthood to offer sacrifices to Elohim. We read this in 1 Peter 2: 4 & 5: ***'And coming to Him as to a living stone, rejected by men, but choice and precious in the sight of Elohim, you also, as living stones, are being built up as a spiritual house for a Set-apart priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices acceptable to Elohim through Yahshua Messiah.'*** Even though we are physical at present, we are being trained to become a spiritual priesthood. We keep the Sabbath, new moons and Set-apart Days of YHVH as shadows of (Spiritual) things to come (Colossians 2: 16 & 17). We read in the 2nd part of verse 5 and verse 6 of Revelation 1 that Yahshua made us to be a kingdom of priests: ***'To Him who loves us, and released us from our sins by His blood, and He has made us to be a kingdom, priests to His Elohim and Father; to Him be the esteem and dominion forever and ever Amein.'***

The first time that we read in the Scriptures about a person or being, holding the two offices of king and priest together, is in Genesis 14: 18: ***'And Melchizedek king of Salem brought out bread and wine; now he was a priest of Elohim Most High.'*** We see in Hebrews 7: 3 that Melchizedek was without father, without mother, without genealogy, having neither beginning of days nor end of life, but made like the Son of Elohim. In Psalm 110: 4 talking about our Messiah, David wrote: ***'YHVH has sworn and will not change His mind, "Thou are a priest forever According to the order of Melchizedek."'*** In Hebrews 5: 5 & 6 we read accordingly: ***'So also Messiah did not glorify Himself so as to become a high priest, but he who said to Him, "THOU ART MY SON, TODAY I HAVE BEGOTTEN THEE"; just as He says also in another passage, "THOU ART A PRIEST FOREVER ACCORDING TO THE ORDER OF MELCHIZEDEK."'***

The Order of the Priesthood of Melchizedek will consist of the High Priest and King, Yahshua with other priests reigning under Him. In Romans 8: 29 & 30 we read: ***'For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the first-born among many brethren; and whom He predestined, these He also called; and whom He called, these He also justified; and whom He justified, these He also glorified.'*** A second witness to this may be read in Hebrews 2: 11: ***'For both He who sanctifies and those who are sanctified are all from one Father; for which reason He is not ashamed to call them brethren.'*** We, who are called during this age, are predestined, if we make it, to become kings and priests under Yahshua during His millennial rule. This means that we will be in the first resurrection as is recorded for us in Revelation 20: 6: ***'Blessed and Set-apart is the one who has a part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of Elohim and of Messiah and will reign with Him for a thousand years.'*** This tells us that we who know Elohim and believe in the one, whom He has sent, namely Yahshua the salvation of YHVH, are to become kings and priests under Yahshua during His millennial rule.

Let us turn to Hebrews 7: 11 - 17 where we read: ***'Now if perfection was through the Levitical priesthood (for on the basis of it the people received the Law²⁴), what further need was there for another priest to arise according to the order of Melchizedek. And not be designated according to the order of Aaron? For when the priesthood is changed, of necessity there takes place a change of law²⁵ also.'*** For the one concerning whom these things are spoken belongs to another tribe, from which no one has officiated at the altar, For it is evident that our Master was descended from Judah,

²⁴ The Sacrificial Law – every time the people sinned they had to bring an animal to sacrifice for their sin. They had to understand that it was only by the shedding of blood that there was remission for sin.

²⁵ Whereas the Levitical priesthood offered sacrifices, Yahshua our Messiah offered up Himself, as we read in the last part of Hebrews 9 verse 26: 'He has been manifested to put away sin by the sacrifice of Himself.'

a tribe with reference to which Moses spoke nothing concerning priests. And this is clearer still, if another priest arises according to the likeness of Melchizedek, who has become such not on the basis of a law of physical requirement, but according to the power of an indestructible life (Yahshua). For it is witnessed of Him (in Psalm 110: 4), "THOU ART A PRIEST FOREVER ACCORDING TO THE ORDER OF MELCHIZEDEK."

Yahshua our Messiah referred to His body as being a Temple when in John 2: 19: ***'Yahshua answered and said to them, "Destroy this temple and in three days I will raise it up."*** In verse 21 we see that even though the Jews mistakenly thought that He was talking about the temple in Jerusalem, He was actually speaking of His body. We read in 1 Corinthians 6: 19 & 20 that our bodies are likewise the temple of the Set-apart Spirit: ***'Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Set-apart Spirit who is in you, whom you have from Elohim, and that you are not your own? For you have been bought with a price; therefore glorify Elohim in your body.'*** We need to worship YHVH in spirit and in truth in our bodies.

In Hebrews 9: 15 we read about Yahshua's priesthood as follows; ***'And for this reason He is the mediator of a new covenant, in order that since a death has taken place for the redemption of the transgressions that were committed under the first covenant (or priesthood), those who have been called may receive the promise of eternal inheritance.'*** Continuing on in Hebrews 8: 9 & 10 we read: ***'NOT LIKE THE COVENANT WHICH I MADE WITH THEIR FATHERS ON THE DAY WHEN I TOOK THEM BY THE HAND TO LEAD THEM OUT OF THE LAND OF EGYPT; FOR THEY DID NOT CONTINUE IN MY COVENANT, AND I DID NOT CARE FOR THEM, SAYS YHVH. "FOR THIS IS THE COVENANT THAT I WILL MAKE WITH THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL AFTER THOSE DAYS, SAYS YHVH: I WILL PUT MY LAWS INTO THEIR MINDS, AND I WILL WRITE THEM UPON THEIR HEARTS. AND I WILL BE THEIR ELOHIM, AND THEY SHALL BE MY PEOPLE."*** Granted, this will only happen when we who are

called are the Spiritual sons and daughters of Elohim, if we make it into His eternal Kingdom.

However, we need to start practicing to become kings and priests in the coming Kingdom of Elohim. We will have priestly duties to perform in the Kingdom of Elohim and we need to start performing those priestly duties during this age. What are the duties of a royal priest? Let us turn to Exodus 29: 38 & 39 to see what some of these duties are: ***“Now this is what you shall offer on the altar; two one year old lambs each day, continuously. The one lamb you shall offer in the morning, and the other lamb you shall offer at twilight.”*** O yes, we do not sacrifice animals any longer, but are nevertheless required to make two offerings per day. In Exodus 30: 7 & 8 we read: ***“And Aaron shall burn fragrant incense on it; he shall burn it every morning when he trims the lamps. And when Aaron trims the lamps at twilight (in the evening), he shall burn incense. There shall be perpetual incense before YHVH throughout your generations.”*** In Psalm 141: 1 & 2 we read what David said about such offerings: ***“O YHVH, I call upon thee; hasten to me! Give ear to my voice when I call to Thee! May my prayer be counted as incense before thee; The lifting up of my hands as the evening offering.”*** We also read about the prayers of the saints being incense in Revelation 5: 8: ***‘And when He had taken the book, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell down before the Lamb, having each one a harp, and golden bowls full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints.’*** And also in Revelation 8: 4 as follows: ***‘And the smoke of the incense, with prayers of the saints, went up before Elohim out of the angel’s hand.’***

In Daniel 9: 21 we see that we should pray in the evening and in the morning, as follows: ***‘while I was still speaking in prayer, then the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision previously, came to me in my extreme weariness about the time of the evening offering.’*** We must not forget our priestly duties. We must never forget to pray in the evening and in the morning. Pray for the Kingdom of Elohim to come; Pray for the peace of Jerusalem; Ask YHVH to forgive us our sins as we

forgive them that sin against us; Ask YHVH to give us more of His Set-apart Spirit; Pray for our leaders, both spiritual and physical. Pray for the President of South Africa. Pray also for the leader of the free world, President Bush. Pray that they may make decisions which will allow us freedom to worship YHVH our Elohim and to live in peace.

In Hebrews 13: 15 we are admonished as follows: ***‘Through Him (Yahshua) then, let us continually offer up a sacrifice of praise to Elohim, that is, the fruit of lips that give thanks to His name.’*** We need to always praise YHVH our Elohim, the King of the universe for all the blessings and benefits which He bestows upon us. In Acts 3: 1 we read that the apostles also prayed during the afternoon (about 3 p.m.): ***‘Now Peter and John were going up to the temple at the ninth hour, the hour of prayer.’*** As we have seen before in Genesis 30: 8: ***‘There shall be perpetual incense before YHVH throughout your generations.’*** In Leviticus 24: 1 & 2 we also read: ***‘Then YHVH spoke to Moses, saying, “Command the sons of Israel that they bring to you clear oil from beaten olives for the light, to make a lamp burn continually.”’*** We should never neglect to make contact with YHVH. We need to have our lamps burn continually, as we read in Luke 12: 35: ***“Be dressed in readiness, and keep your lamps alight.”***

In Luke 11: 34 we read that the eye is the lamp of the body: ***“The lamp of your body is your eye; when your eye is clear, your whole body also is full of light; but when it is bad, your body is full of darkness. Then watch out that the light in you may not be darkness.”*** If we do not have enough oil in our lamps, it will go out. We know that olive oil refers to the Set-apart Spirit and that we may ask YHVH for more of His Set-apart Spirit, else our lamps could go out. We read in Luke 11: 13 ***“If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Set-apart Spirit to those who ask Him?”*** As a second witness to this, we read in 2 Timothy 1: 6 ***‘And for this reason I remind you to kindle afresh the gift of Elohim which is in***

you through the laying on of my hands*²⁶.** In Proverbs 31 : 18 we read about the virtuous woman as follows: ***'She senses that her grain is good; Her lamp does not go out at night.'

Prayer early in the morning is like putting new wood on the fire to keep it burning after a long night. We read in Leviticus 6: 12 ***'And the fire on the altar shall be kept burning on it. It shall not go out, but the priest shall burn wood every morning; and he shall lay out the burnt offering on it, and offer up in smoke the fat portions of the peace offerings on it.'*** We need to pray earnestly for the forgiveness of our sins as per the example of David, when Nathan the prophet came to him, after he had gone in to Bathsheba. We read his prayer of repentance in Psalm 51: 1 – 7 ***'Be gracious to me, O Elohim, according to thy loving-kindness; According to the greatness of thy compassion blot out my transgressions. Wash me thoroughly from my iniquity, And cleanse me from my sin. For I know my transgressions, And my sin is ever before me. Against Thee, Thee only have I sinned, And done what is evil in thy sight, So that Thou art justified when Thou dost speak, And blameless when Thou dost judge. Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity, And in sin my mother conceived me. Behold, Thou dost desire truth in the innermost being, And in the hidden part Thou wilt make me know wisdom. Purify me with hyssop, and I shall be clean; Wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow.'*** Let us follow David's example and as priests in the making, start performing our priestly duties by offering up regular prayers to our heavenly Father.

²⁶ We are given a small portion of the divine nature of YHVH, called a pledge of our inheritance when we are sealed by the Set - apart Spirit at immersion and the laying-on of hands (of an elder in the congregation), according to Ephesians 1: 13 & 14 "In Him you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of salvation – having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to the redemption of Elohim's own possession, to the praise of His glory." Also see Acts 2: 38.

Chapter 17: Are we Nazarenes?

There are many today who claim to be Nazarenes. We know from history that like today, many Jews in Yahshua's time were waiting for the coming of the Messiah. Yahshua's ministry commenced after His immersion by John the Immerser in 27 AD. The first Nazarenes were Torah observant Jews, who also believed that Yahshua was the Messiah. They were originally known as 'the Way' (see Acts 9: 2; 19: 9 and 24: 14) and eventually became known as 'Nazarenes' as may be seen in Acts 24: 5. The Hebrew word for Nazarene is Notsrim, meaning branches. We know that many prophesies in the Scriptures used the word Netzer or branch to refer to Messiah (examples of these are in Isaiah 11:1 and 60: 21; Jeremiah 23: 5; Jeremiah 33: 15; Zechariah 3: 8 and 6: 12). It is believed that many of the believers in Yahshua quoted these verses a lot and became known as 'branch people' or Notsrim. They like the Pharisees who lived during the time of Yahshua, believed in a Messiah, the resurrection of the dead, angels, spirits and Satan. They accepted all the customs of Judaism, but in addition believed that Yahshua was the Messiah, divine (apparently the Essenes do not believe this) and eternal.

We have seen that Nazarenes were simply Jews who also believed that Yahshua was the Messiah, similar to the Messianic Jews of today. Today we refer to ourselves as Nazarene Israelites because not all of our members are Jewish, but are now as believers in Messiah Yahshua part of the commonwealth of Israel (see Ephesians 2: 11 – 14), known as the Israel of Elohim (see Galatians 6: 14 - 16). Galatians 3: 28 & 29 puts it as follows: ***“There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free man, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in Messiah Yahshua. (29)And if you belong to Messiah, then you are Abraham’s offspring, heirs according to the promise.”*** Even though some use these Scriptures to preach against Torah observance, the last verse actually implies that if we are offspring of Abraham, and heirs according to the promise, then we will honor the covenant that YHVH made with

Abraham and his (male) descendants throughout their generations, and be circumcised in the flesh.

Now that we know what or who Nazarene Israel is, I would like to ask the following question: If I call myself a Nazarene Israelite (or Messianic Israelite), after our Master Yahshua, am I a good example of what a Nazarene or Messianic should be? Am I a true follower of the way of the Nazarene? Think about it. Once we accept Yahshua as our Savior and are immersed in His Name, we accept a tremendous responsibility. We become representatives of Yahshua on earth. We become Ambassadors of Messiah and the Kingdom of Elohim, as proclaimed by Yahshua in Mark 1: 14 & 15. We know that Yahshua was an example for us, as we read in John 13: 15 where He said: ***“For I gave you an example that you also should do as I do.”*** A second more obvious witness to this may be found in 1 Peter 2: 21, as follows: ***‘For you have been called for this purpose, since Messiah also suffered for you, leaving you an example for you to follow in His steps.’*** All of us, but especially our Elders and Teachers should follow Yahshua’s example, setting an example for new believers and outsiders, like perhaps non-believing spouses and children, etc.

We believe that we Nazarenes have been called out of the world by Elohim, to be first fruits of the Spirit, according to Romans 8: 23, 28 & 29: ***‘And not only this, but also we ourselves, having the first fruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting eagerly for adoption as sons (and daughters), the redemption of our body. (28) And we know that Elohim causes all things to work together for the good to those who love Elohim, to those who are called according to His purpose. (29) For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the first-born among many brethren.’*** We have seen in Galatians 3: 29 that we are Abraham’s offspring, heirs according to promise. We see according to Hebrews 11: 9 & 10 that Abraham (Isaac and Jacob): ***‘By faith (he)²⁷ lived as***

²⁷ Brackets inserted by me for the sake of clarity.

an alien in the land of promise, as in a foreign land, dwelling in tents (temporary dwellings – like we are supposed to, when we keep the Feast of Sukkoth) ***with Isaac and Jacob, fellow heirs of the same promise;*** (10) ***for he was looking for the city*** (the New Jerusalem) ***which has foundations, whose architect and builder is Elohim.*** This tells us that our fathers in the faith, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob believed in eternal life and the coming kingdom of Elohim. However, they have not received their promise yet, according to verse 39 of Hebrews 11. The reason for this is given in verse 40 of Hebrews 11, as follows: ***‘because Elohim had provided something better for us, so that apart from us they should not be made perfect.’*** Wow, so they are waiting for us, before all those who have fallen asleep in Messiah are resurrected or changed.

There are numerous Scriptural witnesses to the fact that we are called to be first fruits and for those who have doubts about this calling, I quote a number of these verses here below:

- James 1: 18 ***‘In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’***
- 2 Thessalonians 2: 13 ***‘But we should always give thanks to Elohim for you, brethren beloved by YHVH, because Elohim has chosen you from the beginning for salvation (a foot note in the American Standard Bible reads: Some ancient manuscripts read ‘first fruits’) through sanctification by the Spirit and faith in truth.’***
- 1 Corinthians 15: 20 – 23 ***‘But now Messiah has been raised from the dead, the first fruit of those who are asleep. (21) For since by a man came death, by a man also came the resurrection of the dead. (22) For as in Adam all die, so also in Messiah all shall be made alive. (23) But each in his own order, Messiah the first fruit, after that those who are Messiah’s at His coming.’***
- Ephesians 1: 4 & 5 ***‘just as He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and blameless before Him in love. (5) He predestined us to***

adoption as sons through Yahshua Messiah to Himself, according to the kind intention of His will.'

- ***Hebrews 9: 15 'And for this reason He is the mediator of a new covenant (or priesthood), in order that since a death has taken place for the redemption of the transgressions that were committed under the first covenant (or priesthood), those who have been called may receive the promise of the eternal inheritance (eternal life in the kingdom of Elohim).'***

After Yahshua's resurrection and prior to His ascension to heaven, he taught His disciples one last time about the kingdom of Elohim (see Acts 1: 3). The disciples believed in Him and asked Him (as per Acts 1: 6) when He will restore the kingdom of Israel? In Acts 1: 7 ***'He said to them, "It is not for you to know times or epochs which the Father has fixed by His own authority."*** It seems that YHVH kept these secrets to be revealed at our time, prior to Yahshua's return on Yom Teruah²⁸, from 1 Thessalonians 5: 1 – 8, as follows: (1) ***'Now as to the times and the epochs, brethren, you have no need of anything to be written to you. (2) For you yourselves know full well that the day of YHVH will come like a thief in the night. (3) While they are saying, "Peace and safety!" then destruction will come upon them suddenly like birth pangs upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape. (4) But you, brethren, are not in darkness, that the day should overtake you like a thief; (5) for you are all sons of light and sons of the day. We are not of night or darkness; (6) so then let us not sleep as others do, but let us be alert and sober. (7) For those who sleep do their sleeping at night, and those who get drunk get drunk at night. (8) But since we are of the day, let us be sober (self-controlled)²⁹, having put on the breastplate of faith and love, and as a helmet, the hope of salvation.'***

²⁸ Yom Teruah - discussed in 1 Thessalonians 4: 13 to 18.

²⁹ The footnote attached to the word sober, reads self-controlled.

It is certain that the patriarchs as well as the apostles were also to become first fruits. They were set apart and were the early first fruits and therefore the first faith-filled branches or Nazarenes (as Rabbi Koniuchowsky puts it in a recent paper entitled: 'So are the Netsarim'). We are all branches and share the same root, namely Yahshua our Messiah. As Rabbi Koniuchowsky puts it, *'we share the same testimony, reality and substance. We (both houses) like them, are grafted in and counted as faithful Netsarim/bikkurim (first fruits) when we like they did exercise saving faith.'* By studying the Scriptures we will learn about the examples set for us by our fathers in the faith. O yes, they were also human and did sin, but they certainly have overcome those momentary lapses of faith. We read in Genesis 12 that Abram (before his covenant relationship with YHVH, where his name was changed to Abraham – in Genesis 17) lied to Pharaoh about Sarai his wife (also before her name was changed to Sarah), saying that she was his sister. However, we read in Genesis 26: 4& 5, ***“And I will multiply your descendants as the stars of heaven, and will give your descendants all these lands; and by your descendants all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, (5) because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes and My laws.”*** From these Scriptures we know that Abraham repented from this lie and that YHVH has forgiven him accordingly. If we are to follow in the example set by our father Abraham, we better make sure that we obey YHVH and keep all His commandments, statutes and laws, given in His Torah.

It is clear that our fathers in the faith followed the teachings (or Torah) of YHVH our Elohim. Yahshua, who is the salvation of YHVH our Elohim, is also YHVH in the flesh. We know that Yahshua did not break Torah throughout His life on earth, as is confirmed in Hebrews 4: 15 ***‘For we do not have a high priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has been tempted in all things as we are, yet without sin.’*** In fact Yahshua assured His followers that He did not come to abolish the Law or the Prophets, but to make it more binding, as we see in Matthew 5: 17 – 48.

We know for a fact that Yahshua kept the Sabbath, as is recorded for us in Luke 4: 16 ***'And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath, and stood up to read.'*** We also know from the four gospels that Yahshua our Messiah observed the Set-apart days and festivals commanded in Leviticus 23. John 7 to 13 recounts the final festival period prior to His final days. The events recorded in John 8 to 10, where He said that He is YHVH or the I am a number of times, occurred on the Last Great Day (the eight day of the Feast). Yahshua's words in the temple during the evening (erev) of this day is recorded in John 7: 37 – 39 as follows: ***'Now on the last day, the great day of the feast, Yahshua stood and cried out, saying, "If any man is thirsty, let him come to Me and drink. He who believes in Me, as the Scripture said, "From his innermost being shall flow rivers of living waters."'*** Reading carefully from John 6 to 13, we see that this is a continuous sequence of the final days of Yahshua's life, from Passover to Passover. In fact from John 10: 22 on we see that Yahshua was in the temple in Jerusalem during the Feast of Dedication also known as Chanukah. On this occasion He claimed as follows in verse 30 (of John 10): ***"I and the Father are one."***

The standard, by which we should measure ourselves, is Yahshua. We read in Galatians 5: 13 to 26 ***'For you were called to freedom brethren; only do not turn your freedom into an opportunity for the flesh, but through love serve one another. (14) For the whole law is fulfilled in one word, in the statement, "You shall love your neighbor as yourself." (15) But you bite and devour one another, take care lest you be consumed by one another. (16) But I say, walk by the Spirit, and you will not carry out the desire of the flesh. (17) For the flesh sets its desire against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; for these are in opposition to one another, so that you, may not do the things that you please. (18) But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the Law (i.e. under the punishment or curses of the Law). (19) Now the deeds of the flesh are evident, which are: immorality, Impurity, sensuality, (20) idolatry, sorcery, enmities, strife,***

jealousy, outbursts of anger, disputes, dissensions, factions, (21) envying, drunkenness, carousing, and things like these, of which I forewarn you just as I have forewarned you that those who practice such things shall not inherit the kingdom of Elohim. (22) But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, (23) gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law. (24) Now those who belong to Messiah Yahshua have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires. (25) If we live by the Spirit, let us also walk by the Spirit. (26) Let us not become boastful, challenging one another, envying one another.” Our standard is Messiah and we should not compete against our fellow Nazarenes. We need to compare our actions with that of Yahshua and overcome our shortcomings; else we will not be in the kingdom of Elohim.

We, the first fruits called by Elohim are being judged during this age according to 1 Peter 4: 17 ***‘For it is time for judgment to begin with the household of Elohim; and if it begins with us first, what will be the outcome for those who do not obey the gospel of Elohim.’*** O yes, brethren we need to shape up or ship out. Even though we are certain that our Father YHVH has called us out of darkness into His marvelous light, if we do not measure ourselves against His standard Yahshua and return to Torah, we will not enter the kingdom of Elohim, as is recorded for us in Matthew 22: 14, where we read: ***“For many are called, but few are chosen.”*** This is indeed very scary, fellow believers. It tells us that we need to be extremely careful how we live as the first fruits of YHVH, because we could still, because of reckless living lose our crowns. As mentioned before and as is recorded in 2 Corinthians 5: 20: ***‘(Therefore)³⁰ we are ambassadors for Messiah, as though Elohim were entreating through us; we beg you on behalf of Messiah, be reconciled to Elohim.***

We know that if we have the Spirit of YHVH indwelling us, we could make it into His eternal kingdom. According to the second part of 2 Corinthians 5: 5, we are sealed with the Set-apart Spirit

³⁰ Brackets inserted by me for the sake of clarity.

(at immersion in Yahshua's name) in our hearts as a pledge, for the purpose of becoming immortal or obtaining eternal life. We only get given a small portion of the Set-apart Spirit as a deposit (or pledge) at immersion, as opposed to Yahshua who being YHVH in the flesh, has the full measure of the Set-apart Spirit. Yahshua said that we may ask YHVH for the Set-apart Spirit, in Luke 11: 13, as follows: ***"If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more shall our heavenly Father give the Set-apart Spirit to those who ask Him?"*** Let us therefore ask YHVH to give us more of His Set-apart Spirit, so that we may be lead into all truth. Let us also make sure that we do not quench the Spirit as is recorded in 2 Thessalonians 5: 19 and let us abstain from every form of evil.

Chapter 18: Gratitude.

What is gratitude? The dictionary defines it as: Having kind feelings and thankfulness towards one from whom a favor has been received. We receive weekly Torah portions from a number of Rabbis on a regular basis and we are very thankful for it. A while back we received a true Sabbath story which really emphasized the concept of 'gratitude'. The story was about a Jewish Rabbi and his family. The Rabbi had a very important sermon to prepare for his congregation for the coming Sabbath. He spent many hours in his study checking out his facts and rehearsing his sermon. The Rabbi had two grown sons who were both students at a University in a city a number of hours away from their hometown. The two sons informed their mother that they would come home for the weekend and surprise their dad by attending the service.

The two lads left the University in the early afternoon and after having traveled a few hours, they were involved in a very serious accident. Both the boys died in the accident. The police contacted the Rabbi, but since he was busy putting the final touches to his sermon, his wife took the call. She was devastated to hear the news. She cried bitterly in her bedroom, but decided not to tell her husband, until he has delivered his sermon. She knew that the sermon would not be the same if her husband heard about his children. In addition she knew that the boys could not be buried on the Sabbath in any case.

She kept her composure for the next few hours until the service was over and the congregants went home. Then the Rabbi's wife broke the news to her husband, as follows: She reminded him that everything they have comes from YHVH and that everything is a gift which they always appreciated deeply. However, she added that there are times when our Heavenly Father requires us to return what He gave us. She proceeded by giving her definition of gratitude, which I will never forget; in fact we wrote it on a large fridge magnet, to keep us mindful of it. She stated: 'Gratitude is the recognition that life owes me nothing and all the good that I have is a gift'. She then proceeded to remind her

husband that YHVH gave them two very good gifts when He gave them their two sons. These were two very gifted boys who were excellent students, but that it was the will of our Father YHVH to take their lives back the previous afternoon, when they both died in an accident. Our hearts went out to this very brave woman, who had enough self-control to wait for her husband to deliver his sermon, before telling him the devastating news. I am not sure how this account ended, but I have remembered it for a number of years to date and am positive that it will be with me for a few years more.

In Deuteronomy 8: 10 we read the command to bless YHVH our Elohim, after we have eaten, as follows: ***“When you have eaten and are satisfied, you shall bless YHVH your Elohim for the good land which He has given you.”*** The whole notion behind this verse is that we remain thankful and do not forget where our blessings come from: that YHVH is the giver of all that we have, as may be read in verses 11 – 14 of Deuteronomy 8: (11) ***“Beware lest you forget YHVH your Elohim by not keeping His commandments and His ordinances and His statutes which I am commanding you today; (12) lest, when you have eaten and are satisfied, and have built good houses and lived in them, (13) and when your herds and your flocks multiply, and your silver and gold multiply, and all that you have multiplies, (14) then your heart becomes proud, and you forget YHVH your Elohim who brought you out from the land of Egypt (which also pictures sin), out of the land of slavery.***

In Psalm 24: 1 we see that: ***‘The earth is Elohim’s and all it contains, The world and those who dwell in it.’*** However, in Psalm 115: 16 we read: ***‘The heavens are the heavens of YHVH; But the earth He has given to the sons of men.’*** This apparent contradiction is according to the Rabbi’s not real. They hold that the first verse describes the entire world as Elohim’s property, prior to us saying a blessing, whereas the second verse, describes the earth as having been given to man, after saying the blessing. We know that by giving a blessing to YHVH, we tell Him that we are thankful for the gifts that He gives us.

However, this has become a problem in today's society. How thankful are we for everything that we receive from our heavenly Father?

The inputs of life come to us directly from Elohim. Creation was not completed (± 15.3) millions of years ago, but is an ongoing process that we come into contact with every time we take something that we need from Elohim's world. YHWH orders us to say a blessing when we have eaten and are satisfied. We offer YHWH a blessing and in return He gives us His creation to enjoy. Our failure to bless YHWH once we have eaten, is comparable to stealing from our parents. It is compared to a man who destroys as may be read in Proverbs 28: 24 ***'He who robs his father or his mother, And says, "It is not a transgression," Is the companion of a man who destroys.'***

Talking about the character traits to be found in society today, we read in 2 Timothy 3: 1 - 5: (1) ***'But realize this, that in the last days difficult times will come. (2) For men will be lovers of self, lovers of money*** (or as it says in the KJV – covetous), ***boastful, arrogant, revilers*** (or as it says in the KJV – blasphemers), ***disobedient to parents, ungrateful, unholy,*** (3) ***unloving, irreconcilable, malicious gossips*** (or false accusers), ***without self-control, brutal, haters of good,*** (4) ***treacherous, reckless, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of Elohim;*** (5) ***holding to a form of godliness, although they have denied its power; and avoid such men as these.'*** Like I said in a sermon before, a person who hates himself, is a danger to himself and others and should be avoided at all cost, since he might harm anyone else as easily as, he will take his own life. We do not have to look very hard to see most of the things listed in 2 Timothy 3, in our world. The world is full of people with some or all of these attributes. In fact if we look real hard, we might even find some of these attributes in ourselves.

If we study Yahshua's prophesies about the time during which we live, as given in Matthew 24 and Luke 21, we will realize that time is getting short. YHWH wants us to be about His business,

without judging the people in the world. YHVH is long suffering towards us and wants to give us the full opportunity to make it into His Kingdom. We need to start judging ourselves, instead of our neighbor. YHVH wants us to measure ourselves against His Torah, to repent where we knowingly fall short and return to full Torah observance. Let us not be arrogant, thinking ourselves better than other people. If you are able to say that you have none of the attributes listed in 2 Timothy 3, then you must have had some before your repentance and immersion into Yahshua's saving Name. While all these conditions are serious character flaws, the worst is probably being ungrateful, also known as Ingratitude. The reason why I say this is the fact that ungratefulness causes or underlies most of the other flaws.

Let us consider each one of the flaws mentioned (in 2 Timothy 3) in turn:

- 'Lovers of self' - on its own this is not wrong, as long as we love our neighbor as ourselves. However, we know that the connotation, in which this quote is used, means that they love themselves to the exclusion of others. This is not according to the teachings of our Master Yahshua, who said in John 13: 34, ***"A new commandment I give to you, that you love one another, even as I have loved you, that you also love one another."*** This is specifically talking about Nazarene Israelite brethren. However, Yahshua also restated the command that we should love our neighbor as ourselves in Mark 12: 13.
- 'Lovers of money' or 'covetous' - This means to desire to have what belongs to others. Rav Shaul equates covetousness with lust in Romans 7: 7 (KJV) as follows: ***"What shall we say then? Is the law sin? Elohim forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust (coveting), except the law had said, "Thou shalt not covet."*** As I said in a previous sermon, it is not wrong to desire something, as long as you are prepared to work for it. The problem is that we may even overdo that. We must be careful not to want something so much that we

never stop working. So much so that we neglect to keep the Sabbath and Set-apart Days of YHVH our Elohim.

- 'Boastful and arrogant' – this is a major flaw as people with these character traits; think that they do everything on their own. They do not realize that if YHVH wants, he can take it all away – in a blink of an eye. We need to realize that all we have comes from YHVH, even our intelligence and muscle power. We read in Romans 12: 3 ***'For through the grace given to me I say to every man among you not to think more highly of himself than he ought to think; but to think so as to have sound judgment, as Elohim has allotted to each a measure of faith.'***
- 'Revilers' or 'blasphemers' - This is talking about people who teach against the truth of YHVH, denying Yahshua the Master who redeemed us from our sins, as per 2 Peter 2: 1 – 4 (1) ***'But false prophets also arose among the people, just as there will also be false teachers among you, who will secretly introduce destructive heresies, even denying the Master who bought them, bringing swift destruction upon themselves. (2) And many will follow their sensuality, and because of them the way of the truth will be maligned; (3) and in their greed they will exploit you with false words; their judgment from long ago is not idle, and their destruction is not asleep.'***
- 'Disobedient to parents' – This has become a major problem worldwide. The problem does however not only rest with the children – it results from weak parents who give in to every demand of their children. The children get to watch hours of TV and movies, without much control. Parents fail to properly instruct their children and neglect to ever teach their children the teachings (Torah) of our Father YHVH. The children get spoiled and start to disobey the instructions of their parents. This is a direct violation against the 5th Commandment.
- 'Ungrateful' - In Luke 17: 11 – 19 we read the account where Yahshua, when on His way from Jerusalem, passed

between Samaria and Galilee, and entered a certain village, where ten leprous men approached Him and asked Him to heal them. Continuing on from verse 14 we read: ***‘And when He saw them, He said to them, “Go and show yourselves to the priests.” And it came about that as they were going, they were cleansed. (15) Now one of them, when he saw that he had been healed, turned back, glorifying Elohim with a loud voice, (16) and he fell on his face at His feet, giving thanks to Him. And he was a Samaritan. (17) And Yahshua answered and said, “Were there not ten cleansed? But the nine – where are they? (18) Was no one found who turned back to give glory to Elohim, except this foreigner?” (19) And He said to him, “Rise and go your way; your faith has made you well.”*** We also read in Colossians 3: 15 ***‘And let the peace of Messiah rule in your hearts, to which indeed you were called in one body, and be thankful.’***

- ‘Unholy’ – many do not ascribe to the word ‘holy’ and prefer to use ‘Set-apart’ instead of ‘Holy’. Nevertheless, we know that the people this is talking about eat un-kosher food, eat fat and blood, get tattoos, and do whatever is against Torah, because they are totally oblivious of the teachings of Elohim, or believe that Yahshua has abolished the Law. What is important for us to remember, as the Israel of Elohim, is that we need to be Set-apart or holy and not ‘unholy’. In Deuteronomy 28: 9 we read: ***‘YHVH will establish you as a Set-apart (holy) people to Himself, as He swore to you, if you will keep the commandments of YHVH your Elohim, and walk in His ways.’*** We also read in Isaiah 62: 12 ***‘And they will call them, “The holy people, The redeemed of YHVH”, And you will be called, “Sought out a city not forsaken.”***
- ‘Unloving, irreconcilable, malicious gossips, without self-control, brutal, haters of good’ – we are living during a time where mainline religions, political leaders, and society, call those who uphold morality ‘hate-mongers.’ Those who speak out against homosexual practices, abortion and up-hold the

Ten Commandments are demonized. These people call evil good, and good evil, they substitute bitter for sweet and sweet for bitter. This is exactly what is prophesied in Isaiah 5: 20 - 21. In verse 24 of Isaiah 5 we read why they do this, as follows: ***‘Therefore, as a tongue of fire consumes stubble, And dry grass collapses into the flame, So their root will become like rot and their blossom blow away as dust; For they have rejected the law of YHVH of hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.’*** Abortion and homosexuality are seen today as ‘good’ by the people in authority, whilst those who speak against it are seen as ‘evil’.

- ‘Traacherous, reckless, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of Elohim; holding to a form of godliness, although they have denied its power; and avoid such men as these’. We see this every Sunday where people come from church holding copies of the Scriptures - but they are hypocrites, because they profess to believe in the Scriptures, when in fact they deny it and its power, by keeping a day which was never Set-apart by our Father. They say one thing and do another; just as the Pharisees did in Yahshua’s day, as is recorded in Matthew 23: 1 - 3, ***‘Then Yahshua spoke to the multitudes and to His disciples, saying, “The scribes and the Pharisees have seated themselves in the chair of Moses; therefore all that they tell you, do and observe, but do not do according to their deeds; for they say things, and do not do them.”’***

Let us therefore make sure that we do not have any of the character traits mentioned above, but rather be like the people mentioned in Colossians 3: 15 & 16: ***‘And let the peace of Messiah rule in your hearts, to which indeed you were called in one body and be thankful. Let the word of Messiah richly dwell within you, with all wisdom, teaching and admonishing one another with psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with thankfulness in your hearts to Elohim.’***

Chapter 19: Feast of Trumpets (Yom Teruah).

The Feast of Trumpets begins at the new moon on the seventh month and is a Set-apart convocation. It is the day that our Jewish brothers call the Head of the Year. This is the day where the civil New Year is counted from. The ten days of awe begins at Yom Teruah and ends at Yom Kippur. Transliterated Psalm 81: 3 reads as follows: 'Tiqu va'chodesh shofar ba'kesh le'yom chagenu', meaning 'Blow the shofar at the moon's renewal; at the time of concealment of our festive day.' Yom Teruah is the only Feast Day that falls on a new moon. The moon is renewed immediately after the shadow of the earth, between the sun and the moon, covers the moon and it commences its move towards renewal. The renewed moon cannot be seen by the 'naked' eye and only becomes visible as a crescent moon 1½ to 2 days after concealment. Yes the new moon is in concealment for ±2 days (See 1 Samuel 20: 5, 27 & 34), and is only 'watched' to determine the date for Trumpets. If Atonement will be on a Friday or a Sunday, Trumpets is moved one day on, ensuring that Atonement is never on the day before or after a weekly Sabbath. Concealment takes up to 2 days, which ensures that even in the event of such a postponement, Trumpets will still occur during concealment of the moon.

The reasons why we keep postponements are that both the Day of Atonement (Yom Kippur) and the weekly Sabbath need a period of preparation. Both the Sabbath and Yom Kippur are Sabbaths of complete rest, on which we are not supposed to do any work whatsoever. Our ladies need to prepare food for the Sabbath which should be a delight and a Feast Day, picturing the Millennium rule of Yahshua after mankind's six thousand years of misrule. We also need to prepare ourselves for the Day of Atonement, by stop drinking coffee and other substances that could result in major headaches and Migraines on the Day of Atonement and by drinking lots of clean water. In addition we need to prepare spiritually for this the most solemn Day of Elohim's calendar. Other reasons for postponements are: that the last day of the Feast of Sukkoth (or Tabernacles) should not be on a Sabbath; and that our dead should normally be buried

on the day of death. The only reason for not burying our dead on the same day should be for a weekly or annual Sabbath (High Feast Day), or if a post-mortem investigation needs to be performed, if foul play is suspected. Postponements ensure that our dead are buried the next day after a weekly or annual Sabbath, and not be kept unnecessarily for more than a day. Another reason for postponements may be found in Leviticus 19: 5 – 7 (as well as in Leviticus 7: 15 – 18), where we read: ***“Now when you offer a sacrifice of peace offerings to YHVH, you shall offer it so that you may be accepted. (6) It shall be eaten the same day you offer it, and the next day; but what remains until the third day shall be burned with fire. (7) So if it is eaten at all on the third day, it is an offense; it will not be accepted.”***

It is therefore desirable that our ladies prepare the food for our Sabbath meals, at its earliest after the fifth day, on erev yom shishi called Thursday evening in English, which is really already the evening of Friday (according to the Hebrew way of thinking). If should the Day of Atonement fall on a Friday, which we know it cannot, then food for the weekly Sabbath will have to be prepared on Thursday afternoon; the three day rule mentioned in the quoted Scriptures above, will then apply, meaning that by rights we should not eat such foods on the Sabbath, after the Day of Atonement on Friday. O yes, some will say: ‘but we have refrigeration today and it is possible to keep food for months without it becoming bad’. Did you know that some people use the same argument for eating pork, i.e. that it may be eaten today as refrigeration, stops it from going off? My answer to those people is: “Rubbish! - what YHVH has declared unclean can never be prayed over or washed clean.”

In Numbers 29: 1 we read: ***‘Now in the seventh month, on the first day of the month, you shall also have a Set-apart convocation (a worship service); you shall do no laborious work (where you earn a living). It will be to you a day of blowing trumpets.’*** This indicates that it should be a day of remembrance to us – a day on which we remember that YHVH is still working in our lives. One of the lessons that we learn by keeping the Set-apart Days of YHVH, is the desire to choose His

ways over our own. Taking part of His observances is a clear indication of our desire to follow YHVH in obedience. How do we show our Father that we love Him? We read in 1 John 5: 3: ***'For this is the love of Elohim, that we keep His commandments; and His commandments are not burdensome.'*** We may be able to talk the most convincing talk about how religious we are, but unless our words translate into actions, it is all just empty phrases. Rav Shaul refers to such words in 1 Corinthians 13: 1 as ***'a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal.'*** Keeping the Feast Days of YHVH is a test of our sincerity.

Keeping the annual Passover requires that we examine ourselves with a view to repent and return to Torah obedience. We keep the Passover as a memorial to Yahshua's death, one of the traditions in which we follow Rav. Shaul, as He followed Messiah – see 1 Corinthians 11: 1, 2 and 23. By partaking of the memorial Passover, we also indicate that we have rooted out all that offends in our lives, which is reinforced by the removal of leaven from our homes for the Feast of Unleavened Bread. Even though there may not be a real need to keep the Passover year after year, if we stopped sinning after the first time that we partook of it. Unfortunately, I am sad to say that due to human nature this is not possible; we still fall short of the glory of YHVH and will do so until we are resurrected one day. Nevertheless YHVH has provided seven yearly Feast Days for us to repent and return to Him and full Torah observance. If we remember the weekly and annual Sabbaths of YHVH, we will draw closer to Him in obedience on these Days.

YHVH instructed Moses about the first Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread almost two months before he received the two tablets of stone containing the codified law. YHVH told Moses in Exodus 12: 14, ***'Now this day will be a memorial to you, and you shall celebrate it as a feast to YHVH; throughout your generations you are to celebrate it as a permanent ordinance.'*** We see here that it is a 'feast to YHVH' and that it is for ever. In Leviticus 23 YHVH commanded Moses in verse 2, as follows: ***"Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, '(YHVH)'s appointed times which you shall proclaim***

as Set-apart convocations – My appointed times are these.”

Notice that these are the Set-apart Days of YHVH and not that of the Jews only. The Sabbath day is on every seventh day from sunset to sunset. However, notice the phrase ‘which you shall proclaim’ in verse 2. This indicates that Moses (or whoever sits in Moses’ seat today – see Matthew 23: 2 and Romans 3: 1 - 4) was responsible for proclaiming the Set-apart days of YHVH, with the proviso’s given in Leviticus 23: 4 (‘at the times appointed for them’) and Exodus 34: 22 (at the turn of the year or equinox (‘tequfah’ in Hebrew, meaning ‘revolution, circuit or end’).

The Hebrew term for convocation is ‘miqra’, which refers to an officially called assembly. The noun ‘miqra’ is derived from the verb ‘qara’, the verb rendered ‘proclaim’ in Leviticus 23: 2 & 4. What exactly does it mean? It is the same word used in Genesis 1: 5 where Elohim ‘called’ the light ‘Day’ and ‘called’ the darkness ‘Night’ - ***‘And there was evening and there was morning, one day.’*** Also in Genesis 1: 8 & 10, where YHVH ‘called’ the firmament ‘Heaven’ (Gen. 1: 8) , ‘called’ the dry land ‘Earth’ and ‘called’ the gathered waters the ‘Seas’ (Gen. 1: 10). Later we see that YHVH brought before Adam the animals that He had created to see what Adam would call them. ‘and whatever Adam called (qara) a living creature, that was its name.’ (Gen. 2: 19). So we see that ‘qara’ means to ‘call’, or to name or designate. In Genesis 2 it was Adam, who did the naming or designation.

How does this relate to the Set-apart days? In Leviticus 23, we learned that a certain person or group was responsible for designating or naming the days on which the congregation was to assemble before YHVH. It is therefore not an individual matter for each Israelite to arrive at by himself; rather it was a matter to be proclaimed by an authoritative body. Most people usually read over the implication of who was to name, or designate the days that would be considered the appointed Feast Days of YHVH. Who ever sits in Moses’ seat today have the authority to designate these days – in the same way that YHVH gave Adam the authority to name or designate the animals that He had created. O yes, Romans 3: 1 & 2 say that the Rabbinical Jews of

today have the Oracles – the authority to proclaim the Set-apart Days of YHVH. In verses 3 of Romans 3 we read that even if some did not believe, their unbelief will not nullify the faithfulness of Elohim. In fact those who suggest that, are liars, as may be seen in verse 4 of Romans 3.

Many, who normally refuse to keep the Feast Days of YHVH, cite that it was part of the ceremonial or sacrificial laws, which was done away with and need not be kept any longer. To fully understand this question, we need to consider two scriptural concepts. They are known as a Shadow and a Type. There is a major difference between a shadow and a type and we will discuss each one of these in turn:

- Type: The sacrificial laws are types. Once Yahshua became the (sacrifice) law - there was no longer a need for the type. However we now keep the Passover with new emblems or as Yahshua stated in Luke 20: 19 and 20 ***'And when He had taken some bread and given thanks, He broke it, and gave it to them, saying, "This is My body which is given for you; do this in remembrance of Me."*** ***'And in the same way He took the cup after they had eaten, saying, "This cup which is poured out for you is the new covenant in My blood."*** Yahshua has fulfilled the Sacrificial Law and introduced a new way of keeping Elohim's Passover. There is no longer a requirement to sacrifice animals, every time we sin, as Yahshua died once for all. Today we keep the Passover with unleavened bread, representing Yahshua's body - bruised for our iniquities; and the wine representing Yahshua's blood, which was shed for the forgiveness of the sins of the world - including ours.
- Shadow: A shadow points to the reality, but never does away with it. The Set-apart days (the Feasts Days of YHVH) are shadows of things to come according to Colossians 2: 17. It relates YHVH our Elohim's plan of salvation for all humankind, to us. We keep the Feast days yearly to rehearse the plan of YHVH, so that we as first fruits will be able to teach His plan of salvation and other teachings to our

siblings during the millennium rule of the Messiah from Jerusalem.

Sacrificial Laws were introduced after the incident of the golden calf, after the Torah was given to Moses on Mount Sinai. We know that the Torah or the Law was also given to Abraham, 430 years before, as may be read in Galatians 3: 17 – 19 & 24 ***'What I am saying is this; the Law, which came four hundred and thirty years later, does not invalidate a covenant previously ratified by Elohim, so as to nullify the promise. (18) For if the inheritance is based on a promise; but Elohim has granted it to Abraham by means of a promise. (19) Why the Law (the sacrificial law) then? It was added because of transgressions, having been ordained through angels by the agency of a mediator, until the seed should come to whom the promise had been made. (24) Therefore the (sacrificial) Law has become our tutor to lead us to Messiah, that we may be justified by faith.'*** (also see Genesis 26: 5). As was mentioned before, Yahshua became the sacrifice and fulfilled the Sacrificial Law, but nothing in the Scriptures affects or alters our responsibility to keep the other spiritual laws, including the Set-apart Days of YHVH. This is why we find that the apostles were keeping the Feast Days even after Yahshua's resurrection and ascension in the Brit Chadashah, as may be seen in Acts 12: 3; 18: 21; 20: 6 & 16; 27: 9 and 1 Corinthians 5: 8. In fact we know that the Set-apart Days of YHVH will also be kept in the Kingdom of Elohim and that people everywhere will be so doing, as is recorded in Isaiah 66: 23 ***"And it shall be from new moon to new moon (including Yom Teruah) And from Sabbath to Sabbath, All mankind will come to bow down before Me says YHVH."***

We see that those who refuse to keep the Feast of tabernacles during the Millennium, will be punished, as is recorded in Zachariah 14: 16 – 18 ***'Then it will come about that any who are left of all the nations that went against Jerusalem will go up from year to year to worship the King, YHVH of hosts, and to celebrate the Feast of Booths (Tabernacles). (17) And it will be that whichever of the families of the earth does not***

go up to Jerusalem to worship the King, YHVH of hosts, there will be no rain on them. (18) And if the family of Egypt does not go up or enter, then no rain will fall on them; it will be the plague with which YHVH smites the nations who do not go up to celebrate the Feast of Booths.'

As we have mentioned already, the Feast that we observe today, namely Trumpets or Yom Teruah, begins at the new moon on the seventh month. On this Feast On Yom Teruah, we look forward with eager anticipation to the return of Yahshua the Messiah, for He will return at the sound of the last trumpet and the shout of the archangel. The blowing of trumpets was used to call Israel to assemble together to prepare for a journey or for war. When Yahshua our Messiah returns to the Mount of Olives, the nations of the earth will gather together to fight against Him. Satan has deceived the whole world (Revelation 12: 9) and they will try to destroy the Messiah at His return. The feast of Trumpets also signals the resurrection of the dead in Messiah, as may be read in 1 Corinthians 15: 21-23: ***"For since by man came death, by Man also came the resurrection of the dead. For as in Adam all die, even so in Messiah all shall be made alive. But each one in his own order: Messiah the first fruits, afterward those who are Messiah's at His coming."*** Yahshua will resurrect the first fruits, those who are called now, to reign with Him for a thousand years. We need to pray that Yahshua will return soon, to this fast deteriorating world, ushering in the Kingdom of YHVH and bringing His perfect government on earth as it is now in heaven. This is what the feast of Trumpets depicts and what Yahshua taught us to pray for in Matthew 6: 10.

There are people today, who insist that the Feast Days of YHVH may only be kept in Jerusalem. However, we keep the Feast Days of YHVH as a shadow of things to come. In addition we should be mindful of Yahshua's own words in John 4: 21 – 24 ***"Woman believe Me, an hour is coming when neither in this mountain, nor in Jerusalem, shall you worship the Father. (22) You worship that which you do not know; we worship that which we know, for salvation is from the Jews*** (meaning He Yahshua the salvation of YHVH is a Jew, as well as that the Jews have the Oracles of Elohim). ***(23) But an hour is coming,***

and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in Spirit and truth; for such people the Father seeks to be His worshippers.”

Finally: What must be understood at this time, is that when Yahshua returns, at the Feast of Trumpets, He is not coming back as a baby in a manger, but to put down a rebellious world and to usher in the kingdom of Elohim. May each one of us be like Rav Shaul when he said clearly and with total resolve in the middle section of Acts 18: 21(KJV), as follows: ***“I must by all means keep this feast.”***

Chapter 20: Scriptural health laws.

Scriptural health laws are to be found mainly in Leviticus 11 through 17 and in Numbers 19, but also elsewhere in the Torah in Leviticus 5: 2 - 3; Deuteronomy 14: 2 - 21; 23: 10 -15; 24: 8; 26: 14; and Numbers 31: 19 - 20. These Scriptures tell us what defile human beings. The main causes of defilement are eating from the unclean foods(1) mentioned in Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14; contact with leprosy (2) – broadly defined as contagious diseases, molds and fungi (including mushrooms)³¹; discharges from the human body such as excrement (3), seminal emissions or menstrual blood (4); mucus (when a person sneezes or spits); contact with dead bodies (5) (man or animal); contact with idols (6); and childbirth (7).

It is not usually necessary for Nazarene Jews/Israelites who were born into the faith to be reminded of these Scriptural health laws, as it should be part of their way of life. However, since YHVH is busy calling people from Christianity and other faiths to come into the truth and His way of life, it is necessary to explain these laws contained in Torah. The reason being that gentiles do not as a norm believe or study the Torah and Christianity on the other hand, insists that Yahshua (the one they call Jesus) came to abolish His Father's Law. We know that in His own words Yahshua our Messiah and savior said that He did not come to abolish the Law or the prophets, but to make it more binding (in Matthew 5: 17 – 48). In addition we read in the Brit Chadashah (the New Covenant) in 2 Corinthians 6: 14 - 18 ***'Do not be bound together with unbelievers; for what partnership have righteousness and lawlessness, or what fellowship has light and darkness? (15) Or what harmony has Messiah with***

³¹ We read in Genesis 1: 29 & 30: *'Then YHVH said, "Behold I have given you every plant yielding seed that is on the surface of all the earth, and every tree which has fruit yielding seed; it shall be food for you; and to every beast of the earth and to every bird of the sky and to every thing that moves on the earth which has life, I have given every green plant for food"; and it was so.'* In Leviticus 11 YHVH tells us which meats are clean to eat and here in the very beginning of Torah, He tells us which plants we may eat – it should be green yielding seed. Mushrooms as we know are fungi; definitely not green yielding seed, may be full of parasites and therefore not fit for human consumption.

Belial, or what has a believer in common with an unbeliever? (16) Or what agreement has the temple of Elohim with idols? For we are the temple of the living Elohim; just as Elohim said, "I will dwell in them and walk among them; And I will be their Elohim, and they shall be my people. (17) Therefore, come out from their midst and be separate," says YHVH. "And do not touch what is unclean; And I will welcome you. (18) "And I will be a father to you, And you shall be sons and daughters to me." Says YHVH Almighty.' Yes, we should not touch what is unclean; a leper, discharges from a human body, idols, unclean meats, dead bodies. If we do so by chance, we will be unclean until the evening and should wash our clothes and bodies with (soap and) water.

Let's examine each one of the categories listed in the opening paragraph in more detail:

1. Eating unclean foods: In Leviticus 11: 7 – 8 we read: ***"and the pig, for though it divides the hoof, thus making a split hoof, it does not chew cud, it is unclean to you. You shall not eat of their flesh nor touch their carcasses; they are unclean to you."*** Did you know that pork parasites can be contracted by simply handling fresh pork? When ingesting infected pork man is infected with the Trichinella larvae; the capsule that surrounds each larva is dissolved by the digestive juices and the larva attaches itself to the intestine, from where they enter the bloodstream. Pork tape-worm is another parasite that grows to almost two meters in length in its human host. Influenza (flu) is one of the illnesses which pigs share with humans. This illness is harbored in the lungs of pigs during summer months and tends to affect pigs and humans in the cooler months. Sausage containing bits of pigs' lungs and those who consume pork sausage tend to suffer more during flu epidemics. Pig meat can also lead to itching and inflammation and sulfur contained in deposits of its mucus in tendons and cartilage causes Arthritis and Rheumatism in human beings. In Leviticus 11: 10 – 11 we also read: ***"But***

whatever is in the seas and the rivers, that do not have fins and scales among all the teeming life of the water, and among all the living creatures that are in the water, they are detestable things to you, (11) and they shall be abhorrent to you; you may not eat of their flesh, and their carcasses you shall detest.” Shellfish such as shrimps, lobsters, oysters, mussels, clams and crabs are considered scavengers and consume foods that are harmful to human beings. They are contaminated with parasites, viruses and enteric organisms that cannot be killed even with high heat. These could cause Typhoid, Dysentery, Hepatitis B or paralysis of the muscles of the arms, legs or lungs, depending upon the degree of pollution of the water, in which they live. Do not ever eat shrimp or prawn if you have just taken Vitamin C pills; as this could cause you to die from arsenic poisoning within hours.

2. Leprosy and other contagious diseases: Examples of leprosy and similar contagious diseases are Hanson's disease, Chickenpox, Smallpox, Typhoid, Polio and Scarlet fever. In today's society the Aids virus is very resourceful and escapes new medicines and the body's own defenses. People with these diseases should be isolated or quarantined (as per Leviticus 13: 4 & 5). Anything a person with these diseases touch must be washed (Leviticus 15: 11) and whoever touches such a person's bed or skin must wash his clothes and himself (Leviticus 15: 1 – 7).
3. Excrement: The biggest health problem is that flies spread germs because they feed off decaying food and feces. Every time an Israelite 'goes to the bathroom,' he must dig a hole and cover his dung with earth (Deuteronomy 23: 12 – 14). This should be done when we are camping outside, where there are perhaps no 'bathroom' facilities available. In the modern sense, we must flush the toilet and ensure that it is clean when we are done. Also be sure to wash your hands after you've been to the 'bathroom'.

4. Seminal emissions and menstrual blood: A woman beginning with menstrual flow must not have marital relations with her husband (Leviticus 18: 19) and after the cessation of menstrual flow, she must count seven days (Leviticus 15: 19 & 28) and then immerse her entire body in water. Then, after a couple have had marital relations, both husband and wife should bathe and are unclean until the evening (Leviticus 15: 18). By the way the uncircumcised are also considered unclean (see both Isaiah 52: 1 & Ezekiel 44: 9), since it is more difficult to clean properly under the skin.

5. Contact with dead bodies: All dead animals are unclean (Leviticus 11: 8, 24, 29 – 31), including those permitted as food for mankind (Leviticus 11: 31 – 39). If a man touches it, he becomes unclean until the evening and should wash his clothes and his body. Touching a grave, a human corpse or a bone renders a person unclean (Numbers 19: 11 – 18; Leviticus 22: 4). This applies to funerals, autopsies and soldiers in war.

6. Idols: We read in Genesis 35: 2: ***‘So Jacob said to his household and to all who were with him, “Put away foreign gods (idols) which are among you, and purify yourselves, and change your garments.”’*** We also read in Isaiah 30: 22 ***‘And you will defile your graven images, overlaid with silver, and your molten images plated with gold. You will scatter them as an impure thing; and say to them, “Be gone!”’*** And we further read in Ezekiel 36: 17 & 25: ***“Son of man, when the house of Israel was living in their own land, they defiled it by their ways and their deeds (eating pig and unclean foods, keeping pagan feasts and bringing Xmas trees into their homes, keeping pictures and statutes of Mary, J*e*s*u*s and even B*u*d*d*h*a*, as well as attending church in buildings with steeples); (25) “Then I will sprinkle clean water on you, and you will be clean; I will cleanse you from all your filthiness and from all your idols”*** The Scriptures do not specify how idols make us unclean, but tell us not to learn the way of the

pagan nations and worship idols, for example Xmas-trees (see Jeremiah 10: 1- 5).

7. Childbirth: After the birth of a baby boy, a woman must count seven days and wash in a mikveh. After the birth of a baby girl she must count fourteen days and wash in a mikveh as per Leviticus 12: 1-5.

Besides the health and hygiene benefits to be had by refraining, as far as is possible from coming into contact with the above mentioned, we read in Deuteronomy 23: 14 ***“Since YHVH your Elohim walks in the midst of your camp to deliver you and to defeat your enemies before you, therefore your camp must be holy; and He must not see anything indecent among you lest He turn away from you.”*** If we do not clean up our lives, then we cannot expect YHVH to be amongst us, or to protect us. The point is who or what makes YHVH angry? We read in Isaiah 65: 3 – 4 ***‘A people who continually provoke Me to My face, Offering sacrifices in gardens and burning incense on bricks; (4) Who sit among graves, and spend the night in secret places; Who eat swine’s flesh, And the broth of unclean meat is in their pots.’***

Moses knew how to avoid contagious sexual diseases. In addition to capital punishment for homosexuals and adulterers as set out in Leviticus 20: 13, quarantine laws for victims infected with communicable diseases are given in Leviticus 13: 45 & 46. In Leviticus 13: 4 we read about Hyssop. Hyssop oil is an antiseptic which kills fungi and bacteria. Branches of hyssop were used in water on an unclean person. We should be careful to touch unclean things and wash daily (Numbers 19; Leviticus 11: 15) using soap (Numbers 19: 18). We should also avoid sitting in public benches or public toilets. We should wash our hands and the food we eat (Leviticus 22: 6). We should wash after going to the bathroom (Deuteronomy 23: 12 – 14) and after touching dead bodies (Numbers 19: 16) insects and spiders (Leviticus 22: 5 – 6).

Willful violation of any Scriptural law is sin, but impurity is not always associated with sin. For example marital relations, giving birth, burying the dead, menstruating or becoming leprous all causes impurity, but none are sinful acts as such. So even though we cannot always avoid contact with things that defile us, we need to make sure that we follow the Scriptural rules to become pure after such incidences. We may for example not partake of the Passover, if we have been in touch with dead bodies – when attending a funeral and assist as a pallbearer. In Numbers 9 : 9 - 12 we read what to do in such a situation, as follows: ***‘Then YHVH spoke to Moses, saying, (10) “Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, ‘If any one of you or of your generations becomes unclean because of a dead person, or is on a distant journey, he may, however, observe the Passover to YHVH (11) ‘In the second month on the fourteenth day at twilight, they shall observe it; they shall eat it with unleavened bread and bitter herbs. (12) ‘They shall leave none of it until morning, nor break a bone of it; according to all the statutes of the Passover they shall observe it.’*** This tells us that if we could not partake of the normal Passover, because we were considered unclean at the time, i.e. on the evening of the fourteenth of Aviv, then we should partake of it a month later. We must never neglect to partake of the Passover, since such an action could result in us being cut off from our people (Israel), according to verse 13 of Numbers 9. However, we should also remember that we need to be circumcised in both the heart and the flesh to partake of the Passover.

The regulations and rules that medical doctors know and use today are all to be found in the Scriptures. Rules regarding scrubbing with (soap and) water after contact with a disease are found in Leviticus 14: 9; 15: 7, 13 -19; 17: 16; 22: 6; Numbers 19: 7 – 8 and Jeremiah 2: 22. Clothes washers, sinks, bathtubs and showers are all Scriptural as per Numbers 31: 20 – 24. We use Hyssop as an antiseptic (Numbers 19: 18) and fuller’s soap (Malachi 3: 2) to clean ourselves. The law concerning quarantine is mentioned in Leviticus 12: 1 - 4 and 13: 46. Using a face mask like dentists and doctors do is used in Leviticus 13: 45. It is

common practice in hospitals to shave off body hair for better hygiene as mentioned in Leviticus 13: 33, 45 – 46; 14: 8 – 9. We see in Leviticus 15: 8 that spit is regarded as an infective discharge. Gonorrhea and Herpes can both be contracted from towels, clothing and bedding as per Leviticus 11: 32. Unglazed pottery must be broken and cannot be easily cleaned of germs (Leviticus 11: 33), which means that chipped drinking cups and cracked ceramic dinnerware, should be discarded. Containers of food and drink must be covered to prevent dead bugs or flies and gnats from sitting or falling on it (Numbers 19: 15).

We know that many Christian believers obey most of the Scriptural rules without ever reading the Tanach, since they have been taught these rules by their parents. The question that I ask myself many times is why? O yes, some of these rules are common sense, but I am certain that some of these we have learnt from our parents by word of mouth, because they learnt it from their forefathers, who were in the very distant past, part of the twelve tribes of Israel. This was the way Torah upon the lips used to be passed on from one generation to the next, in Scriptural times. There might also be many of these rules, which we transgressed, because those amongst us, who come from a Christian background, were taught incorrectly, by deceived parents. In that case brethren, it has become time for us to say as we read in Jeremiah 16 verse 19: ***‘O YHVH, my strength and my stronghold, And my refuge in the day of distress, To thee the nations (the goyim) will come From the ends of the earth and say, “Our fathers have inherited nothing but falsehood, Futility and things of no profit”*** My fellow believers in Yahshua, it is time for us to repent and return to full Torah observance – if we truly want Elohim to come and tabernacle with us again. Think about it!

Chapter 21: What does it mean to walk in Messiah's Halakah?

Yahshua taught according to the Torah, that YHVH comes first and that we need to put Him (YHVH) first in every aspect of our lives, as may be read in Matthew 22: 35 – 38. ***'And one of them, a lawyer, asked Him (Yahshua) a question, testing Him, (36) "Teacher, which is the great commandment of the Law?" (37) 'And He said to him, "'YOU SHALL LOVE YHVH YOUR ELOHIM WITH ALL YOUR HEART, AND WITH ALL YOUR SOUL, AND WITH ALL YOUR MIND.'*** (38) ***This is the great and most foremost command.***" We know that this was not a new doctrine, as the words that Yahshua spoke was part of the Sh'ma given in Deuteronomy 6: 5. This was the statement of belief in One Elohim, that Yahshua the Word made flesh, (being part of Elohim), commanded the people of Israel, 1400 years earlier, to love Him in this manner.

Almost no one on earth has really understood what it means to put YHVH first in our lives, or how to achieve such an assignment. This was only revealed the first time between 27 and 31 AD, when Yahshua was on the earth as YHVH in the flesh. He set himself up as the example of one who puts YHVH first. In John 12: 26 Yahshua said to some Greeks who were on their way to keep the feast, ***"If anyone serves Me, let him follow Me; and where I am, there shall My servant also be; if anyone serves Me, the Father will honor him"*** The true believers would live their lives as Messiah did – in a loving relationship with YHVH our Elohim. The commandments, statutes and laws of YHVH, reveal how He looks at things and what He thinks. Yahshua our Messiah came to magnify the law and make it glorious as prophesied about Him in Isaiah 42: 21. Yahshua showed in what way the Torah is the foundation of a loving relationship between us and Elohim. He made the relationship clear, by demonstrating it to us, through His own example.

Few of the religious people today, as well as those who were living in Yahshua's day, understood Elohim's requirement for

salvation. In John 5: 39 – 40 we read what Yahshua told them, as follows: ***“You search the Scriptures, because you think that in them you have eternal life; and it is these that bear witness of Me; (40) and you are unwilling to come to Me, that you may have life.”*** In this Yahshua essentially said, that the Jews of His day were unwilling to see Him as the embodiment of Torah. He continued speaking to religious leaders of His day, saying in verses 42 – 46 of John 5: ***“But I know you, that you do not have the love of Elohim in yourselves. (43) I have come in My Father’s name, and you do not receive Me; if another shall come in his own name you will receive him. (44) How can you believe, when you receive glory from one another, and you do not seek the glory that is from the one and only Elohim? (45) Do not think that I will accuse you before the Father; the one who accuses you is Moses (or the Torah), in whom you have set your hope. (46) For if you believed Moses, you would believe Me, for he wrote of Me. (47) But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe My words?”*** The Torah tells us what Yahshua is like, how He thinks and acts. Yahshua was the (mirror) image of the Father, He was revealing the Father.

However, the religious people of Yahshua’s day, who had this portrait of Yahshua as YHVH, misunderstood. The religious people of His day put their trust in the words written on the Torah scrolls. They were unaware of the truth behind these words. They, like many today believed that they naturally wanted to obey Elohim. They the most devout individuals of their day became bogged down in law-keeping itself. The Law became an end in itself and YHVH was forgotten. In Mark 7: 9 - 13 we read ***‘He (Yahshua) was also saying to them, “You nicely set aside the commandment of Elohim in order to keep your tradition. (10) For Moses said, ‘HONOR YOUR FATHER AND YOUR MOTHER’; and, ‘HE WHO SPEAKS EVIL OF FATHER OR MOTHER, LET HIM BE PUT TO DEATH’; (11) but you say, ‘If a man says to his father or his mother, anything of mine you might have been helped by is Corban (that is to say, given to Elohim),’ (12) you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother; (13) thus invalidating***

the word of Elohim by your tradition which you have handed down; and you do many things such as that.” These people were constantly in Yahshua’s presence, witnessing His teachings and many miracles, but could not recognize him for what He was.

Rav Shaul summed the problem of the people living in Yahshua’s time up in Romans 10: 2 – 4, as follows: ***‘For I bear witness that they have a zeal for Elohim, but not according with knowledge. (3) For not knowing about Elohim’s righteousness, and seeking to establish their own, they did not subject themselves to the righteousness of Elohim. (4) For Messiah is the goal (end) of the law for righteousness to everyone who believes.’*** We must remember that there is much more to obeying and submitting to YHVH than keeping his Torah. The account of the person who asked Yahshua how to obtain eternal life demonstrates the point, as is recorded in Matthew 19: 16 - 22: ***‘And behold, one came to Him and said, “Teacher, what good thing shall I do that I may obtain eternal life?” (17) And He said to him, “Why are you asking Me about what is good? There is only One who is good; but if you wish to enter into life, keep the commandments.” (18) He said to Him (Yahshua), “Which ones?” And Yahshua said, “YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT MURDER; YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT ADULTERY; YOU SHALL NOT STEAL; YOU SHALL NOT BEAR FALSE WITNESS; (19) HONOR YOUR FATHER AND MOTHER; and YOU SHALL LOVE YOUR NEIGHBOR AS YOURSELF.” (20) The young man said to Him, “All these things I have kept; what am I still lacking?” (21) Yahshua said to him, “If you wish to be complete go and sell your possessions and give to the poor, and you shall have treasure in heaven; and come, follow Me.” (22) But when the young man heard this statement, he went away grieved; for he was one who owned much property.’*** It was required of this rich young man to give up the very thing that meant most in His life – his possessions. He was however, not willing to put Elohim first in his life.

It is not easy to make YHVH our Elohim number one in our lives. We have to give up so much that is dear to our lives. We have to forfeit old friendships, old traditions and pleasures like smoking, eating outlandish (un-kosher) foods, and drinking too much. Even our families do not understand the changes that true Nazarene Israelites are required to make. Rav Kepha (Peter) wrote about this in 1 Peter 4: 4, as follows: ***'And in all this, they are surprised that you do not run with them into the same excess of dissipation, and they malign you.'*** Yes, those of us called to follow Yahshua might find ourselves at odds with fellow workers, family and friends. Even Yahshua talked about this fact in Matthew 10: 36 – 37, as follows: ***“And A MAN’S ENEMIES WILL BE THE MEMBERS OF HIS HOUSEHOLD. (37) He who loves father or mother more than Me is not worthy of Me; and he who loves son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me.”***

The true believer must put Elohim before everything and everyone else. In Matthew 16: 24 & 25 Yahshua said to His disciples: ***“If anyone wishes to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me. (25) For whoever wishes to save his life shall lose it; but whoever loses his life for My sake shall find it.”*** Real suffering may result from self denial and the struggle to put Elohim first in our lives. In this way we carry the same cross through life, that Yahshua did. Yahshua did whatever pleased His Father, no matter what the consequences were. We need to continually put down thoughts and sinful actions that threaten the relationship between us and Elohim. To maintain a closeness with YHVH we need to think and act like YHVH does, else we miss the mark. Elohim’s character is the same and never changes, as we read in Malachi 3: 6 ***“For I, YHVH, do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob, are not consumed.”*** If we find ourselves separated from Elohim, it is because we moved away, not the other way round!

We are involved in a spiritual war inside our minds. Rav Shaul mentions this in Galatians 5: 17 ***“For the flesh sets its desire against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; for these***

are in opposition to one another, so that you may not do the things that you please. In 2 Corinthians 10: 4 & 5 Rav Shaul wrote: ***'For the weapons of our warfare are not of the flesh, but divinely powerful for the destruction of fortresses. (5) We are destroying speculations and every lofty thing raised up against the knowledge of Elohim, and we are taking every thought captive to the obedience of Messiah.'*** The question is: Can we win this spiritual war? Rav Shaul answers this question in Philippians 4: 13, as follows: ***'I can do all things through Him who strengthens me.'*** As a side light, notice again what 2 Corinthians 10 verse 5 is saying (paraphrased): that by the Set-apart Spirit as our guide, we will be able to destroy all speculations and false doctrines raised up against the knowledge of Elohim, if we are obedient to Messiah. Back to our spiritual battle, in Romans 12: 1 & 2 Rav Shaul called true believers to make the supreme sacrifice, as follows: ***"I urge you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of Elohim, to present your bodies a living and Set-apart sacrifice, acceptable to Elohim, which is your spiritual service of worship. (2) And do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what the will of Elohim is, that which is good and acceptable and perfect."***

True believers must take up their cross with Messiah and mortify every human desire that interferes with their relationship with Elohim. Rav Shaul wrote in Galatians 5: 24 ***'Now those who belong to Messiah Yahshua have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires.'*** We need to get rid of our former selves, that engages in sin. Rav Shaul again admonishes us in Colossians 3: 5 ***'Therefore consider the members of your earthly body as dead to immorality, impurity, passion, evil desire, and greed which amounts to idolatry.'*** Continuing in verses 8 – 10 of Colossians 3, we read: ***'But now you also put them all aside: anger, wrath, malice, slander and abusive speech from your mouth. (9) Do not lie to one another, since you laid aside the old self with its evil practices, (10) and have put on the new self who is being renewed to a true knowledge according to the image of the One who created***

him. To be crucified with Messiah is to put aside all those desires and actions that make us sin. As we crucify the old self, we will begin to seek Elohim's way of life. If we seek YHVH and His rulership in our lives, then all our human needs, such as food, drink, clothing, etc., will be added to us, as may be seen in Matthew 6: 33 **"But seek first His kingdom and His righteousness; and all these things shall be added to you."** The true believer has a reward as Rav Shaul says in Hebrews 11: 6 **"And without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to Elohim must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who seek Him."** If we continue in our walk with YHVH and maintain our connection with Him in love, we will receive the gift of eternal life, which is the real purpose of our human existence.

YHVH sent the Word into the world as Yahshua our Messiah. He served the Father for 33½ years by speaking the Father's words and representing the Father here on earth. Yahshua said that he is the way, the truth and the life in John 14: 6, as follows: **"I am the way, and the truth, and the life, no one comes to the Father, but through Me."** Who is Yahshua? He is Elohim, who came in the flesh. He is our Creator and High Priest. Yahshua is the role model for the entire human race. He died for our sins and was resurrected showing us the way to be born again like Him. He was the first born of many brethren. We read accordingly in Colosians 1: 15 **'And He is the image of the invisible Elohim, the first-born of all creation.'** Most human beings will ultimately acknowledge Yahshua by seeking to become like Him. We read this in Philippians 2: 9 & 10 **'Therefore also Elohim highly exalted Him, and bestowed on Him the name which is above every name (10) that at the name of Yahshua EVERY KNEE SHOULD BOW, of those who are in heaven, and on earth, and under the earth.'** He is our perfect example and we should do as it is admonished in Hebrews 12: 2 **'fixing our eyes on Yahshua, the author and perfecter of faith.'**

To walk in Messiah's Halakah, means to do what He did, whilst He was on earth. We know that He was in total obedience to the

Father. If we walk in His Halakah, we will also be in total obedience to the Father. If we do that, we will definitely be in the first resurrection, as first fruits and are assured of a position in the Kingdom of Elohim.

Chapter 22: What is the way of Elohim?

The Nazarene Jewish faith, which we Nazarene Israelites, consisting of both Jewish and non-Jewish believers in Yahshua follow, is a way of life. Early Jewish believers in Messiah used to refer to themselves as 'the way of YHVH' or 'the way of Elohim' as may be read in Acts 18: 25 & 26. Yahshua the one we follow said in John 14: 6, ***"I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, but through me."*** In fact we are even to let our innermost thoughts be ruled by Yahshua our Messiah, as Rav Shaul explained in the last part of 2 Corinthians 10: 5, as follows: ***'and we are taking every thought captive to the obedience of Messiah.'***

The main purpose of a true believer is to seek Elohim's way of life, His thoughts, and His will. To follow the way of Elohim, we have to stop following the ways of the world. To start following the way of Elohim, we need to repent of our worldly ways. But, what is real repentance? A dictionary definition of repentance, is as follows: 'To feel remorse, regret, or sorrow for past conduct; to feel such sorrow for sin or a blemish as to be disposed to change one's life for the better.' The next question is: Repent of what? Sin of course. But, you might ask: What is sin? The Scriptural definition of sin is given in 1 John 3: 4, as follows: ***'Everyone who practices sin also practices lawlessness; and sin is lawlessness.'*** Yes, every time we break a commandment, we sin and need to repent of it. Repentance means that you change your attitude, ask forgiveness of your transgression and return to obey the commandment that you have transgressed. It entails asking that the shed blood of Messiah cover our sins, that the sacrifice of His life be accepted in our stead so that the penalty of our sin can be removed from us.

We read about true repentance in both the Tanach and the Renewed Covenant. We read in Isaiah 55: 7 - 9 ***'Let the wicked forsake his way, And the unrighteous man his thoughts: And let him return to YHVH, And He will have compassion on him; And to our Elohim, For He will abundantly pardon.'***

(8) ***“For My thoughts are not your thoughts, Neither are your ways My ways,” declares YHVH (9) “For as the heavens are higher than the earth, So are My ways higher than your ways, And My thoughts than your thoughts.”*** This is the same repentance spoken about by Peter in Acts 2: 38, as follows: ***“Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit.”***

Yet, we do not just stir up the feeling of hatred for our sins by ourselves. It has to come from Elohim, because, as we read in Romans 2: 4 ***“the kindness of Elohim leads you to repentance.”*** It is YHVH our Elohim who helps us to see our sins. He opens our minds and starts us on our way to repentance: He grants us forgiveness of our sins. This is why we should in prayer ask Him to grant us repentance of those sins that so beset us. Ask Him to help us see our secret sins; those sins that we are not always aware about. The foul word you voice when you drop your cell phone, or when you hit your finger with a hammer, or make a mistake. Yes, those are also sins that we have to repent of. How does YHVH our Elohim call people to see their sins? YHVH in His infinite wisdom often calls people during times of stress and difficulty. Many respond to Elohim’s call during times of sickness, financial problems, family or other problem situations that help us realize our need for Him.

Instead of battling such difficulties with our own strength, we should learn the lesson that YHVH is teaching us. We need to learn that we need YHVH, He does not need us. If we are not willing to obey Him, He is able to raise up stones to take our place. We read the words of John the Immerser in Matthew 3: 8 & 9, as follows: ***“Therefore bring forth fruit in keeping with repentance; (9) and do not suppose that you can say to yourselves, ‘We have Abraham for our father’; for I say to you, that Elohim is able from these stones to raise up children to Abraham.”*** When YHVH called Daniel to repentance, we see his reaction recorded for us as an example in Daniel 9: 3 - 5, as follows: ***“So I gave my attention to YHVH Elohim to seek Him by prayer and supplications, with***

fasting, sackcloth, and ashes. (4) And I prayed to YHVH my Elohim and confessed and said, 'Alas, O YHVH, the great and awesome Elohim, who keeps His covenant and lovingkindness for those who love Him and keep His commandments, (5) we have sinned, committed iniquity, acted wickedly, and rebelled, even turning aside from Thy commandments and ordinances.'" Daniel continues with his prayer of repentance for the people of Israel and himself in the rest of Daniel 9, until verse 19. This prayer is an excellent example of how we should ask YHVH to grant us forgiveness for transgressing His law (Torah).

Another such example was that of Nehemiah, when he found that when the nation of Judah returned to Jerusalem, they were in great distress and reproach because of the condition of the city. His reaction is recorded for us in Nehemiah 1: 4 as follows: **"Now it came about when I heard these words, I sat down and wept and mourned for days; and I was fasting and praying before the Elohim of heaven."** He immediately drew close to Elohim. He did it wholehearted, in an earnest sincere way. He set out to find Elohim and His way, by prayer and fasting. The examples of both Daniel and Nehemiah show that they were willing to do whatever was required to draw close to YHVH and receive His forgiveness.

When Yahshua called Peter to be His disciple (in Luke 5), Peter was fishing all night without success. Yahshua came up to Peter and instructed him to cast out his net once more. Because of his lack of success, up to then, Peter was dubious, but he did as Yahshua instructed. Next we see that Peter caught such a large number of fish that it threatened to sink the boat.

Peter realized that he was in the presence of the Master (MarYah) and as we read in Luke 5: 8, he said: **"Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, O Master!"** Peter realized his sinful condition and felt unworthy to be in the presence of righteousness. But we see the second part of verse 10 and 11 of Luke 5 how Peter, James and John responded to Yahshua's call, as follows: **'And Yahshua said to Simon (Peter), "Do not fear, from now on you will be catching men."** (11) **And when they**

had brought their boats to land, they left everything and followed Him. These examples of the servants of Elohim show that they freely acknowledge their sins and shortcomings. It takes an extremely sincere person to say what David said in Psalm 139: 23 – 24: ***‘Search me o Elohim, and know my heart; Try me and know my anxious thoughts; (24) And see if there be any hurtful way in me, And lead me in the everlasting way.’*** If indeed we are seeking YHVH and His way, this is the attitude we will be reflecting. We will freely admit our own sins and shortcomings and beseech YHVH to show us the right way.

There are many more examples where the servants of YHVH came to repentance. In Jeremiah 10: 23 – 24 we read Jeremiah saying: ***“I know, O YHVH, that a man’s way is not in himself; Nor is it in a man who walks to direct his steps. (24) Correct me, O YHVH, but with justice; Not with Thine anger, lest Thou bring me to nothing.”*** The one thing that we should always remember, is recorded for us in 2 Peter 3: 9, as follows: ***‘YHVH is not slow about His promise, as some count slowness, but is patient toward you, not wishing for any to perish but for all to come to repentance.’*** It reminds me of a once popular song, which began with the words: “If I could only live my life again.” Yes, if we could start over, we’d do things differently. We would be kinder, more patient, more loving and more appreciative. We’d give more time to our parents and children, take better care of our health, be less selfish and build a better relationship with fellow human beings and especially with YHVH our Elohim.

Which of us would like to do just that? But time has gone past; Our parents (like mine) have passed away; our children have grown up. It leaves us with sadness in our hearts. However, the good news is that there is still time. The overriding theme of the Scriptures is that, no matter who you are or what you have done, your past mistakes can be forgiven. No matter how far we have drifted from the way of YHVH, we are able to return to Him and enjoy an intimate relationship with Him again. Yahshua our Messiah knew that sinful humans are not ready for the kingdom

of Elohim. Sin is part of our human condition. To be a sinner is the consequence of being born (*'from below'*) as a human being. YHVH sympathizes with our condition. He came to live among us as YHVH our savior (Yahshua), to show us His way, as we read in John 1: 1, 2 & 14: ***"In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. (2) He was in the beginning with Elohim. (14) And the Word became flesh and tabernacled among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth."*** Even though Yahshua never sinned, He shared the pain and frustration of those who did. He came to deliver us from our sin. He came for our salvation.

Yahshua took on Himself the penalty for our sins, willingly experiencing the humiliating death of impalement. When we accept His sacrifice, turning to Him in repentance and being immersed as He commanded, the way is open for us to start all over again. By being begotten anew, we are able to escape the endless cycle of sin that all human beings encounter. This new life means that we are begotten *'from above'*. This new beginning is a chance to be born into the kingdom of Elohim. When we are begotten from above, we become children of Elohim, as we read in John 1: 12: ***'But as many as received Him, to them He gave the right to become children of Elohim, even to those who believe in His name.'*** and John 3: 5, as follows: ***'Yahshua answered, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of Elohim.'*** Immersion symbolizes the death and burial of the old self in a watery grave, as we read in Romans 6: 4: ***'Therefore we have been buried with Him through immersion into death, in order that as Messiah was raised from the dead through the esteem of the Father, so we too might walk in newness of life.'***

This is what gives us a new life; a chance to start again. But not as a hopeless victim of sin and its ways, but as a potential son/daughter of Elohim saved from the enslavement of sin. We are no longer cut off from the way of Elohim. You can now come to know Him as our loving compassionate Father. The most

important thing in our lives becomes to please YHVH our Elohim. We will still make mistakes, but no longer do we have to carry the guilt of sin. We are truly sorry when we let Elohim down and repents to return to Torah as soon as it comes to our attention. YHVH accepts our repentance and forgives us, as the penalty of our sin is already paid. We are not alone in this new life any more. Upon repentance and immersion, we received the gift of the Set-apart Spirit, as may be read in Acts 2: 38.

The Set-apart Spirit comforts us and leads us into all truth as may be read in John 16: 13: ***“But when He, the Spirit of truth, comes, He will guide you into all the truth; for He will not speak on His own initiative, but whatever He hears, He will speak; and He will disclose to you what is to come.”*** The Set-apart Spirit is always present to support, to encourage and to strengthen us. It is the Set-apart Spirit that guarantees us our inheritance as children of Elohim, as we read in Ephesians 1: 13 – 14: ***“In Him (Yahshua), you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of your salvation – having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, (14) who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to the redemption of Elohim’s own possession, to the praise of His esteem.”*** The opportunity to start over, and put our past behind us, sounds almost too good to be true, but that is exactly what Yahshua our Messiah offers us.

We read in Roman 8: 9 – 10 that we now have the mind of Messiah, through the Set-apart Spirit indwelling us, as follows: ***“However, you are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed the Spirit of Elohim dwells in you. But if anyone does not have the Spirit of Messiah, he does not belong to Him, (10) And if Messiah is in you, though the body is dead because of sin, yet the spirit is alive because of righteousness.”*** It is also because of the fact that the Set-apart Spirit indwells us, that we are assured of being resurrected one day. We read this in Roman 8: 11: ***“But if the Spirit of Him who raised Messiah from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Yahshua Messiah from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Spirit who indwells you.”*** When Elohim

first calls us to be His children, He takes us who were once proud, worldly, and disobedient and transforms us.

The transformed spiritual mind can say with Rav Shaul as is recorded for us in Galatians 2: 20, ***“I have been impaled with Messiah; and it is no longer I who live, but Messiah lives in me; and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of Elohim, who loved me, and delivered Himself up for me.”*** The Scriptures also speak of the experience of conversion as a birth into the kingdom of Elohim, as we read in John 3: 3: ***‘Yahshua answered (Nicodemus) and said to him, “Truly, truly, I say to you unless you are born again (from above), he cannot see the kingdom of Elohim.”*** We become children of Elohim as a result of being born from above. As children of Elohim, we should express the fruit of Elohim’s Spirit. The fruit of the Spirit is as we know recorded in Galatians 5: 22 and 23 and includes: love, joy, peace, kindness, gentleness, self-control and the like. These fruits are a witness of true spirituality.

Real spirituality is love, because Elohim is love. Rav Shaul wrote in 1 Corinthians 13: 1 – 3, as follows: ***“If I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, but do not have love, I have become a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal. (2) And if I have the gift of prophesy, and know all mysteries and all knowledge; and if I have all faith, so as to remove mountains, but do not have love, I am nothing. (3) And if I give all my possessions to feed the poor, and if I deliver my body to be burned, but do not have love, it profits me nothing.”*** What does it mean to have love? The next four verses of 1 Corinthians 13, give us the answer. This is indeed true spiritual-mindedness:

- “Love suffers long and is kind” – Are you?
- “Love does not envy; does not parade itself; is not puffed up; does not behave rudely; does not seek its own; is not provoked; thinks no evil; does not rejoice in iniquity, but rejoices in truth; bears all things; believes all things; hopes all things; endures all things” – Are you?

If we truly love Elohim, we will do what He requires of us: we will accept the authority of His Word in our lives; we will not seek our own way to worship Him, but will do whatever we do in accordance to the way He sets out for us in His Word. As representatives of the kingdom of Elohim, we ought to strive to improve ourselves in an ongoing basis, so that ultimately, we will reflect the character traits mentioned in Galatians 5 and 1 Corinthians 13, i.e. to love Elohim with our all and our neighbor as ourselves. How committed are we? A Rabbi once asked his students how to tell when night had ended and the day was dawning. One student ventured the following answer: "Could it be when there is enough light to tell the difference between your brother and your sister?" "No" replied the Rabbi. "What then?" asked his students? The Rabbi answered: "If you don't know that any human being is your brother or your sister, no matter what time it is, it is still night."

Chapter 23: What does it mean to be born again?

To understand what it means to be born again, you have to understand the good news about the kingdom of Elohim. As much as Nicodemus did not understand when Yahshua said to him in John 3: 3, ***“Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of Elohim.”***, people do not understand those words today.

How many today know that the Gospel that Yahshua proclaimed was not a message about His person, but about the coming kingdom of Elohim. Why has it never been understood by the world as the most astounding news ever told? The simple reason is that the religious leaders in Judea hated and rejected it. In addition it has been so distorted and maligned that the whole world has been deceived and has totally misunderstood it.

The good news about the kingdom of Elohim is as Yahshua proclaimed it in Mark 1: 14 & 15, ***‘And after John had been taken into custody, Yahshua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of Elohim, (15) and saying, “The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of Elohim is at hand; repent and believe in the gospel.”*** What did Yahshua mean by the Kingdom of Elohim? We know that a kingdom is usually composed of a nation, ruled by a king. In the Tanach we read how the children of Israel were established as the Kingdom of Israel. As the ancient Kingdom of Israel was composed of the human children of Israel, so the Kingdom of Elohim will be composed of the spiritual born children of Elohim. The question is: What does this have to do with being born again? It is very important for us to know that it has everything to do with it. The Spirit born children of Elohim will be the born again Israel of Elohim.

The prophet Daniel tells us about the Kingdom of Elohim, after foretelling about the Major kingdoms of the world, starting with the Babylonian Empire, in Daniel 2: 44, saying: ***“And in the days of those kings the Elohim of heaven will set up a kingdom which will never be destroyed, and that kingdom will not be left for another people; it will crush and put to an***

end all these kingdoms, but it will itself endure forever.” This tells us that it will be a world ruling kingdom. In the seventh chapter of Daniel we see that there is a connection between this new kingdom and being born again: We read in verse 17 & 18, ***‘These great beasts, which are four in number, are four kings who will arise from the earth. (18) But the saints of the Highest One (the called out ones) will receive the kingdom and possess the kingdom forever, for all ages to come.’*** This implies that these saints will have to be immortal, to possess the kingdom of Elohim for ever!

The coming kingdom of Elohim will be ushered in at the second coming of Yahshua our Messiah. We read about this in Revelation 11: 15, as follows: ***“And the seventh angel sounded; and there arose loud voices in heaven saying, “The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of YHVH and His Messiah; and He will reign forever and ever.”*** Despite of this and many other Scriptures about the coming kingdom of Elohim, the deceived religious leaders of today, mislead people to think that the church is the Kingdom of Elohim or that the Kingdom is something mysterious, to be established in the hearts of men.

The reason why the message of the coming kingdom of Elohim has not been proclaimed before requires that we consider the pre-historic background of mankind. It is not popular today, to mention the existence of Satan the devil. However, Scriptures put great emphasis on the presence of a real devil. In the beginning the earth was ruled by the Government of Elohim. That Government will again be restored at Messiah’s return to earth in supreme power and esteem as we read in Acts 3: 20 & 21, as follows: ***“and that He may send Yahshua, the Messiah appointed for you, (21) whom heaven must receive until the period of restoration of all things about which Elohim spoke by the mouth of His Set-apart prophets from ancient time.”***

But why don’t we have that Government at this time? What happened? When the earth was created at the very beginning, it was absolutely beautiful. We see in Job 38: 7 that at that time

the angels shouted for joy. At that time it was populated by angels and was governed by YHVH our Elohim. Lucifer one of two covering cherubim was trained in the administration of the Government of Elohim, as we read in Ezekiel 28: 14, ***“You were the anointed cherub who covers, And I placed you there. You were on the Set-part Mountain (government) of Elohim; You walked in the midst of the stones of fire.”*** YHVH our Elohim governs by His Torah, which is based on love. However, Lucifer became vane and his heart was lifted up in vanity, because of his superior knowledge and beauty. He rebelled against Elohim and a third of the angels followed him in trying to take over Elohim’s throne, in order to rule the entire universe. Lucifer and his angels were overcome and his name was changed to Satan, the devil. His angels became demons. This universal rebellion resulted in destruction and chaos of the surface of the earth. This is the condition we find the earth in before YHVH re-created it in Genesis 1: 2.

YHVH at this point chose not to create his future children as spirit beings. He decided to initially create human kind from physical matter, in His image with the mind power to think and plan and ‘create’. They would have free moral agency to decide between good and evil. They had to prove through their lives that they would develop the perfect character of YHVH and follow His way of life. However, we know that Adam and Eve sinned – induced by the lies and temptation of Satan. When Yahshua was immersed by John the Immerser, He immediately underwent the most gigantic struggle ever, in His temptation by Satan according to Mark 1: 12 & 13, as follows: ***“And immediately the Spirit impelled Him to go out into the wilderness. (13) And He was in the wilderness forty days being tempted by Satan; and He was with the beasts, and the angels were ministering to Him.”*** Yahshua came to qualify to replace Satan to restore Elohim’s Government on the earth, and to bring world peace. Just like the first Adam had undergone and succumbed to Satan’s temptation, Yahshua had to face and overcome Satan.

After having qualified to become the executive administrator of Elohim’s Government on earth, Yahshua proclaimed the good

news of the coming kingdom of Elohim (Mark 1: 14). He said that the time is fulfilled and that the kingdom is at hand. How is the time fulfilled? And why was the kingdom of Elohim at hand, and not before? The reason is simple, the wonderful news could not be announced until He qualified to replace Satan's rule on earth. However, Yahshua was not at that time going to take over the reign, as Elohim had a definite plan, with a definite time frame. YHVH is dealing with humanity over a 7000-year period. During the first 6000 years, YHVH is allowing humanity to experiment with different forms of government, culture, education and religion. YHVH is allowing us to learn that by living life free of His leadership only leads to failure. In addition Yahshua is going to set-up a world government with the administration of thoroughly trained and experienced disciples. The first six thousand years has proven that man, under Satan's influence, is totally incapable of ruling himself. Human governments have throughout the past six thousand years failed to bring world peace. Yet, even at this stage mankind is unwilling to admit these facts. Men are still trying in vain to work for peace. And that is where being born again comes in.

The term 'born again' has been tragically misunderstood by many. Elohim's Government will be a Divine (or Spiritual) Government, by converted saints who will be changed into divine spirit persons, born of Elohim. As those born of human parents are human beings, so those born of Elohim will be spirit beings, having been given immortality. They shall be born to enter the Kingdom of Elohim. As Yahshua explained to Nicodemus, flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of Elohim: we must be born again, as spirit beings to enter. The plan of salvation entails that we who were because of sin removed from Elohim, must be reconciled to Him. Yahshua came to reconcile us to Elohim: by His shed blood paying the death penalty that we have incurred for our sins. He was also resurrected so that we might be given Elohim's gift of Eternal life. Yahshua ascended to Elohim's throne to become our High Priest, during these years of training and development, as heirs of Elohim to be used in the administration of His Government, under Yahshua at His return. According to the parable of the nobleman in Luke 19, Yahshua

had to return to heaven, to receive the kingdom before He will return. The coronation ceremony will take place in heaven prior to His return. His disciples could not understand why He could not set-up the kingdom of Elohim in their day. They wanted it at that time. It is a human thing to want things now!

The Jewish leaders of His day also expected Yahshua to take over the rulership of the world when He was on earth. Nicodemus was one of these leaders who believed on Yahshua and came to Him privately. Nicodemus and the other Pharisees understood Yahshua's message about the kingdom of Elohim and that it will replace human government. They feared because Yahshua being a Jew like them, was proclaiming the kingdom of Elohim. In addition they thought that He proclaimed the immediate take-over of Roman rule, which could result in them being shorn of their power and perhaps put to death as subversives threatening to overthrow the Roman government. It is for this reason that Yahshua did not waste words. He plainly said that the Kingdom of Elohim is not of this world, but of the world that is to come. It is not composed of humans, but of immortals. If we recall Yahshua also told Nicodemus that except a man is born again, meaning from above, he cannot enter the kingdom. "Born Again" has to do with the kingdom of Elohim.

Puzzled Nicodemus asked in John 3: 4 "***How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born, can he?***" He knew what it meant to being born, but he could not understand a second birth. Yahshua made it clear that the kingdom of Elohim is something which we as physical human beings cannot see. However, Yahshua said that we may enter into the kingdom, if we are born again. The kingdom of Elohim is not of this present human life in this present world, but of a life to come. That which is born of flesh is flesh and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. So Yahshua made it clear, when one is born of the Spirit he will be spirit. The kingdom of Elohim will be composed of spirit beings, not human beings.

At birth, one is delivered from his mother's womb into this world. When born of the Spirit one will be delivered into the Kingdom of Elohim. We are presently flesh and blood beings. When born again we will be spirit. Rav Shaul made it clear in 1 Corinthians 15: 50, saying: ***"Now I say this, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of Elohim; nor does the perishable inherit the imperishable."*** Leading up to verse 50, Rav Shaul explained in verse 47: ***"The first man is from earth, earthy; the second man is from heaven."*** The fact remains that there is a time element to be born again. We cannot be born again in this life. As we are now flesh, we shall become spirit being at the resurrection. That is when we shall be born again, when we shall also enter the kingdom of Elohim. We read in 1 Corinthians 15: 51 & 52, ***"Behold, I tell you a mystery; we shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, (52) in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet; for the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised imperishable, and we shall be changed."***

How shall we be changed? We read in verse 53 of 1 Corinthians 15, ***"For this perishable must put on the imperishable, and this mortal must put on immortality."*** We will only inherit the kingdom of Elohim, once we have put on immortality, after we are resurrected. We read in Romans 8: 9 (paraphrased) that unless one has received the Set-apart Spirit, and the Set-apart Spirit is dwelling in him, he does not belong to Messiah. We receive the Set-apart Spirit when we are immersed in Yahshua's name, as may be read in Acts 2: 38. The Set-apart Spirit entering, and dwelling in us compares to the physical sperm impregnating an ovum; the imparting of eternal spiritual life, later to bring forth a spirit being. As much as a fertilized ovum is not a born human person. Life from the human father has been imparted to it; he has begotten it, but neither the embryo nor the fetus is yet a born person. In the same way the Spirit begotten human is not yet a Spirit being. We continue to read in Romans 8: 11, as follows: ***'But if the Spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Messiah Yahshua from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Spirit who indwells you.'*** There is a direct

comparison between having been born of the flesh, and being born again of Elohim.

A human life starts when a sperm cell from the father impregnates an egg cell from the mother. At this point the father begets a child. The child stays in his mother for another nine months before he is born into this world. At the time of conception birth has not yet occurred. Similarly in being born again, the process of this birth begins when Elohim's divine Spirit-Life is imparted to us by the Set-apart Spirit, from the Father, entering to dwell within us. When, after coming to the truth, repentance and immersion into Yahshua's saving Name the Set-apart Spirit of Elohim is given to us. The human mother's womb serves the function of feeding the unborn child with physical food, so that it may develop and grow physically. We are fed Spiritual food by those whom YHVH called into discipleship. Our commission is after immersion, to teach those whom we have immersed, the things that we have learnt from Yahshua's disciples who went before us (see Matthew 28: 19 & 20) – those who taught us the truth. Eventually those being taught will become teachers, to teach new believers the things that they learnt from their teachers, learnt in the beginning from our Master Yahshua. It is through the guidance of the Set-apart Spirit that our teachers feed us Spiritual food. However, we should check what they teach us, to see if indeed it is from The Scriptures.

We read in Ephesians 4: 11 – 15 that after Yahshua's ascension: ***'And He gave some as apostles, and some as prophets, and some evangelists and some as pastors and teachers, (12) for the equipping of the Set-apart ones (Set-apart by the Ruach HaKodesh) for the work of service, to the building to of the body of Messiah; (13) until we all attain to the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of Elohim, to a mature man, to the measure of the stature which belongs to the fullness of Messiah. (14) As a result, we are no longer to be children, tossed here and there by waves, and carried about by every wind of doctrine, by the trickery of men, by craftiness in deceitful scheming; (15) but speaking the truth***

in love, we are to grow up in all aspects into Him, who is the head, even Messiah. At Messiah's return, those of us who died in Messiah will be resurrected, after which those believers, who are still alive, will be changed into Spirit begotten children of Elohim. Yahshua, who is the first born of many brethren, came to show us the way. We read this in Romans 8: 29, as follows: ***"For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the first-born among many brethren."*** He was the pioneer setting us the example that we too may be born of Elohim.

When we are born again, what will we be like? We read in Philippians 3: 20 & 21: ***'For our citizenship is in heaven, from which also we eagerly wait for a Savior, the Master Yahshua Messiah; (21) who will transform the body of our humble state into conformity with the body of His esteem, by the exertion of the power that He has even to subject all things to Himself.'*** We see therefore that scripture after scripture shows that being born again of Elohim is a process, in which there is a time element, just as being born of human flesh involves a time process. When our heavenly Father YHVH begets a human with the Set-apart Spirit he becomes a child of Elohim. But, he is still human, composed of flesh and blood. When a human father begets a child, the unborn child is already his father's child. Similarly are we already a child of Elohim, once we were immersed and were given a portion of the Set-apart Spirit. But such a child now has to undergo a period of spiritual development and growth. He is in the gestation state in the process toward being born, but not yet born of the Spirit. Like the human embryo must grow till it becomes a fetus, which must grow to the point of being born into the human family, so the new believer, in whom divine life has been started by the gift of Elohim's incorruptible Spirit must grow toward perfection to be born as a child of Elohim. Only then will such a child be perfect; unable to sin.

Rav Kepha (Peter) gives an analogy of this in 1 Peter 1: 23 - 25 saying: ***'for you have been born again not of seed which is perishable but imperishable, that is, through the living and***

abiding word of Elohim. (24) For “ALL FLESH IS LIKE GRASS, AND ALL ITS GLORY LIKE THE FLOWER OF GRASS, THE GRASS WITHERS, AND THE FLOWER FALLS OFF, (25) BUT THE WORD OF YHVH ABIDES FOREVER.” And this is the word which was preached to you.’ Rav Kepha continues in verse 2 of chapter 2, saying: **‘like newborn babes, long for the pure milk of the word, that by it you may grow in respect to salvation.’** He is comparing the Spiritual gestation period of a true believer with that of a newborn human baby, simply because it is difficult to compare it to a physical embryo or fetus. Peter is showing that, as a newborn baby must be nourished and grow physically, so must new believers grow spiritually. When born again, we shall not be helpless spirit babes, but spirit beings of perfection unable to sin. The new believer has to grow in spiritual knowledge and character to become perfect as we see in 2 Peter 3: 18.

Yes, during our converted human life as believers, we are already children of Elohim, but as yet unborn. We have the gift of the Ruach HaKodesh within us, but like a human embryo or fetus, we could still lose eternal life and be aborted. Abraham and others were like us also begotten of Elohim. They had Elohim’s Spirit within them, but they have not yet been born of Elohim. We read this in Hebrews 11: 39 & 40, as follows: **‘And all these (talking about Abraham, Isaac and Jacob), having gained approval through their faith, did not receive what was promised, (40) because Elohim had provided something better for us, so that apart from us, they should not be made perfect.’** Yahshua was indeed the first to be born of Elohim; the first born of many brethren. That was His second birth, as the resurrection will be ours and that of our fathers in the faith. The tremendous event of being born of Elohim will take place when Yahshua returns to the earth. We are now flesh and blood, but at Yahshua’s return we shall be born of Elohim; this vile body shall be changed and made like Yahshua in His glorified body.

Man is composed of flesh, material substance. Those who will be in the first resurrection, will be born of the Spirit and as Yahshua said in Matthew 22: 30, **‘For in the resurrection they neither**

marry, nor are given in marriage, but are like angels in heaven. Marriage is a physical, fleshly union. In the Kingdom of Elohim, when we are born again of the Set-apart Spirit, we shall be spirit, not flesh. Yahshua did not say that we will be angels, but will be like angels, composed of Spirit. Angels were created as spirit beings, not begotten and born of Elohim, as children of Elohim. We shall therefore be higher than angels in the kingdom of Elohim. This is confirmed in Hebrews 2: 6 – 8 (quoted from Psalm 8), as follows: ***‘But one has testified somewhere, saying, “WHAT IS MAN, THAT THOU REMEMBEREST HIM? OR THE SON OF MAN, THAT THOU ART CONCERNED ABOUT HIM? (7) THOU HAST MADE HIM FOR A LITTLE WHILE LOWER THAN THE ANGELS; THOU HAST CROWNED HIM WITH GLORY AND HONOR, AND HAST APPOINTED HIM OVER THE WORKS OF THY HANDS; (8) THOU HAST PUT ALL THINGS IN SUBJECTION UNDER HIS FEET.”’*** At this point it should be abundantly clear, why Satan (a fallen angel) would like to destroy our ministry (and like minded believers) and us as individual believers.

We who have been immersed in Yahshua’s name, are already begotten sons of Elohim, but what we shall be cannot be seen yet, as we read in 1John 3: 1 & 2, as follows: ***‘See how great a love the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called children of Elohim; and such we are. For this reason the world does not know us, because it did not know Him. (2) Beloved, now we are children of Elohim, and it has not appeared as yet what we shall be. We know that, when He appears, we shall be like Him, because we shall see Him just as He is.’*** YHVH created the universe. He is the supreme ruler and is only going to turn over power to rule to those who accept His way; those who will obey His Government, and carry out His Government under Him. As we read in Romans 8: 14, ***‘For all who are being led by the Spirit of Elohim, these are sons of Elohim.’*** We need to continue to be led by the Spirit of Elohim, if we want to ultimately be born again into the kingdom of Elohim. At this time we are only begotten of Elohim and unless we continue to grow in spiritual character, more and more like Elohim, we could be aborted like an unborn human baby.

However, if we continue to grow in grace and knowledge we will at Messiah's return be born again – be changed from mortal to immortal, from human to divine! That will be the true born again experience, which will be far more glorious than the false so-called 'born again' experiences that many deceived thousands think that they have already had. **HalleluYah!**

Chapter 24: How long are we going to condone paganism?

Never has there been so urgent a need to proclaim the kingdom of Elohim to a dying world, as there is today. Paganism is on the increase throughout the world. During the past month we have seen the Christian churches celebrating Easter. They believe that since the word 'Easter' appear once in the King James Version of the Scriptures, that it validates the keeping of Easter instead of Passover. However, if we read the context where the word 'Easter', is used in Acts 12: 1 – 4, we see that it is actually talking about the Passover, kept by Nazarene Israelites and Jews, during the season of Unleavened Bread. This may also be confirmed by checking other translations of the Scriptures, like the 'New American Standard Bible' which I use most of the time³².

Easter is a celebration instituted by the Council of Nicaea: Under guidance of Constantine the Great, the Council of Nicaea decided to reject the Scriptural method of determining the correct date for the Passover, in favor of Easter Sunday. Even though we know that the celebration of birthdays is not Scriptural, nobody in their right mind would keep his/her birthday on the same day of the week every year. If you are one who celebrates your birthday and you were born of Friday the 3rd of June, you would not observe your birthday on the first Friday in June every year, but on the 3rd of June, which could be on any day of the week. If you think that this is a no-brainer, then you are in for a surprise, since this is exactly how Easter Sunday was instituted by the Roman Church. In fact Easter had a pre-Christian origin. It was a festival in honor of Eostre, a Teutonic springtime goddess of fertility. In other words, it was another form of Sun-worship.

³² I use the 'New American Standard Bible' because it is a fairly accurate translation and no one can say that I preach doctrines from a 'Bible' specifically written for and by Nazarene Israelites. Most of my audience is even now new in the faith and because they felt betrayed by their previous affiliations to religion, some are initially wary about versions of the Scriptures written by Nazarene/Messianic groups. I do have copies of 'The Scriptures' published by the Institute for Scripture Research in South Africa as well as 'The restoration Scriptures True Name Edition' published by Rabbi Moshe Koniuchowsky and use them as well as other versions as reference material, since most versions of the Scriptures contain mistranslations, as well as the private agendas of their publishers.

This goddess has many names and is the same as the Assyrian goddess named Istar. In classical mythology Istar was a romantic passionate goddess and any good reference book will testify to the fact that fertility symbols such as Easter eggs and the Easter bunny, originated with Istar. She is also known as the queen of heaven.

Not only was the time of the Scriptural feast of the Passover replaced by the pagan day's date, but the rites of the pagan Easter festival took over, namely the fertility pagan symbols of Easter eggs, the Easter bunny and hot-cross buns. The fact that this celebration has its roots in paganism is shrugged off, by most professing Christians, without delay. They continue to teach their children and grandchildren year after year to venerate an egg laying rabbit, known as the Easter bunny. Do you want to tell me that they believe that rabbits lay eggs?

We are warned in Jeremiah 7: 18 about making hot-cross buns, as follows: ***"The children gather wood and the fathers kindle the fire, and the women knead the dough to make cakes for the queen of heaven; and they pour out libations to other gods in order to spite Me."*** A second witness to this is found in Jeremiah 44: 19: ***"And," said the woman, "when we were burning sacrifices to the queen of heaven, and were pouring out libations to her, was it without our husbands that we made for her sacrificial cakes in her image and poured out libations to her?"*** We are also warned about services such as 'Lent' and the 'Easter Sunrise Services' that Christians keep every year, in Ezekiel 8: 14 – 16: ***'Then He brought me to the inner court of Elohim's house which was toward the north; and behold, woman were sitting there weeping for Tammuz*** (similar to the forty days of Lent between Ash Wednesday and 'Good Friday', kept by Roman Catholics). (15) ***'And He said to me, "Do you see this, son of man? Yet you will see still greater abominations than these."*** (16) ***Then He brought me into the inner court of Elohim's house. And behold, at the entrance to the temple of YHVH, between the porch and the altar, were about twenty-five men with their backs to the***

temple of YHVH and their faces toward the east; and they were prostrating themselves eastward toward the sun.'

How did these pagan ideas get into Christianity? It is important to realize that most Christian ministers and scholars have never seriously tried to follow Yahshua and His apostles. As the professing Christian church grew, its leaders tried to make their religion more acceptable to the pagans around them, in an attempt to win them over, and to avoid persecution. As a result, the original Nazarene faith, which was a sect of Judaism, was cast aside in favor of a counterfeit, paganized belief system. YHVH warned us through Moses not to follow after strange elohim, as we read in Deuteronomy 31: 16 and 17: ***'And YHVH said to Moses, "Behold, you are about to lie down with your fathers; and this people (Israel) will arise and play the harlot with the strange elohim of the land, into the midst of which they are going, and will forsake Me and break My covenant which I have made with them. (17) Then My anger will be kindled against them in that day, and I will forsake them and hide My face from them, and they shall be consumed, and many evils and troubles shall come upon them; so that they will say in that day, 'Is it not because our Elohim is not among us that these evils have come upon us?'"***

We have created our own world of confusion, by not obeying our loving Father YHVH? It is time that we come out of that confusion, if we are serious about showing YHVH that we want to follow Him and be in His kingdom. YHVH is calling us to come out of the confusion of Babylon, as we read in Revelation 18:4, ***'And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, "Come out of her, my people, that you may not participate in her sins and that you may not receive of her plagues."*** YHVH wants us to live in the world, but not be part of the systems of the world. He wants us to live in the world and be a light to the people in the world. Yahshua lived in the world proclaiming the only real solution to the problems of the world – The coming Kingdom of Elohim. After six thousand years of man's rule on earth, the world as we know it is in real trouble and our problems are escalating on a daily basis, because of our pagan ways. People today need not be told that the world is on its way out, since

most of those who are aware of their environment know that – it is so obvious. Our world today may be compared to the time of Noah. We read what Noah’s time was like in Genesis 6: 5, as follows: ***‘Then YHVH saw that the wickedness of man was great on the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually.’*** Like at that time, we read stories in our newspapers of murder, rape, child abuse and stories of world leaders committing adultery and other crimes. This could be directly ascribed to us worshipping other elohim instead of YHVH.

Only the very naïve do not recognize the signs of a dying world. YHVH created the earth especially for us. If we weigh the evidence in the Scriptures and other records of creation, we can only conclude that what our Creator has invested in mankind exceeds our understanding. This investment explains the value that YHVH places on the soul of a potential son/daughter of Elohim making it into His eternal Kingdom. This is why Yahshua explained in Matthew 16: 26, ***“For what will a man be profited, if he gains the whole world, and forfeits his soul?”*** It is also for this reason that YHVH sent His Son to die for the redemption from the penalties of our sins. However, Yahshua did not only die on the execution stake to save us from the penalty of our sins, but that He might teach us about the kingdom of Elohim, and how we may enter the family of YHVH for ever. After Yahshua’s resurrection and ascension to heaven, YHVH gave us His Set-apart Spirit, to teach us all things and to guide us into all truth. He wants us to know His plan of Salvation for all mankind. After immersion, we as begotten children of Elohim are obliged to seek the Truth. In doing so we will learn about Elohim’s plan of salvation for all mankind, by keeping the Feast Days of YHVH that we as Nazarene Israelites are commanded to keep, instead of the pagan festivals that Christianity observes. This is all part of (YHVH)’s plan in preparing us for a position of responsibility in His eternal Kingdom.

We all are aware of the fact that the fossilized fuels that YHVH placed at our disposal for use in the advanced technology that He inspired us to develop during the past hundred years, will only last for another 20 years or so. Think about it: Even in

Satan's rebellion, when the earth was totally destroyed, to the form we find it in Genesis 1: 2, i.e. formless and void, did the all knowing YHVH our Elohim, created fossilized fuels for use of mankind during the final few years, before Yahshua's return to come and rule us, for a thousand years. Brethren, do you fully understand that He did all this for us. So why do we quibble when He asks us to obey Him?

The entire subject of Easter; the way it emphasizes Sunday-keeping; its pagan symbols and rites, such as Easter sunrise services, the hiding of Easter eggs from little children is perpetuating the lie that most in Christianity are not prepared to change, since that is the only time they are prepared to spend on religion. Most are too busy to study and learn about the pagan origins of the so-called 'holy days' that they keep. But, there is some good news for humankind; Yahshua is returning to come and rule us from Jerusalem for a thousand years. That is the good news or gospel that Yahshua preached whilst he was on earth 2000 years ago. We need to start preaching that same gospel – the only lasting solution to the problems in this world. The coming Kingdom of Elohim, will like the flood in Noah's days, bring an end to violence, murder, sickness and decay. When Yahshua our Messiah returns, He is going to change people; all the evil that Satan caused, will be stopped. Crime will be eradicated by divine force and people will be re-educated to know the Torah of YHVH and the benefits that can be enjoyed by keeping them.

During the millennium we will live in perfect harmony, according to the teachings/Torah of YHVH. Yahshua came to show us how to live obeying the law with a Spiritual intent. The churches of the world do not know or preach the true gospel. They believe that John 3: 16 is the true gospel. The fact that our Father loved the world so much that He gave His only begotten Son that whoever believes in Him should not perish, but have eternal life, is indeed very good news. However, few people know that that is not the true gospel. O yes Yahshua came to be our kinsman redeemer and paid the penalty for the sins of the world, including ours. He died in our stead – however, we must never forget that He was resurrected from the grave, three days after His death. He

returned to our Father in heaven, so that the Set-apart Spirit could come to help us live in this evil dying world, until Yahshua will return to come and rule the world for a thousand years.

The people in the world do not want Yahshua to return to rule us, they want their churches to fix the problems of the world, so that they may continue to worship G-d, the way the pagans worship their Mighty Ones, by keeping pagan holidays like Xmas, Easter and Sunday. However, that is definitely not what our Father wants. In Jeremiah 10: 1 – 5 we read: ***'Hear the word which YHVH speaks to you, O house of Israel. Thus says YHVH, "Do not learn the way of the nations (gentiles), And do not be terrified by the signs of the heavens Although the nations are terrified by them; For the customs of the peoples are delusion; Because it is wood cut from the forest, The work of the hands of the craftsman with a cutting tool. They decorate it with silver and with gold; they fasten it with nails and with hammers so that it will not totter. Like a scarecrow in a cucumber field are they, and they cannot speak; they must be carried, because they cannot walk! Do not fear them, for they can do no harm, nor can they do any good.'*** Xmas and Easter can never bring peace on earth, nor can any other pagan festival bring peace – so why continue celebrating these pagan festivals. In Mark 7: 7 & 8 we read: ***"But in vain do they worship Me, teaching as doctrines the precepts of men."*** ***"Neglecting the commandment of Elohim, you hold to the tradition of men."***

Even with our best intentions we cannot and will not obey our Father. In Jeremiah 17: 9 we read: ***"The heart is more deceitful than all else and is desperately sick (wicked in the KJV); who can understand it?"*** By their disobedience to the commandments of YHVH in the Garden of Eden, our forebears implied that they wanted to decide for themselves what is right and wrong. They did not want to listen to the teachings of YHVH – to know what is right and what is wrong. Our forebears acted just like most teenage children of today. Whatever we as parents tell our children not to do that are exactly what they will do. Tell them that smoking is bad for their health and they will go right

ahead and smoke. Mankind does not want to be prescribed to as to what they should or should not do. Satan has deceived the whole world as it says in Revelation 12: 9. He wants us to be rebellious like he is, since he knows that his time is short and he continues to deceive mankind daily. It is only those who have been immersed in the name of Yahshua, who received a portion of the Set-apart Spirit of YHVH our Elohim, who will want to obey Him.

YHVH was concerned about us the nation of Israel, consisting of both the houses of Judah and Israel, since the time of Moses. He spoke about us eventually turning back to Him, like we are doing today. We read accordingly in Deuteronomy 30: 1 - 8, ***“So it shall be when all of these things have come upon you, the blessing and the curse which I have set before you (the curses happening to us during this age), and you call them to mind in all nations where YHVH your Elohim has banished you, (2) and you return to YHVH your Elohim and obey Him with all your heart and soul according to all that I command you today, you and your sons, (3) then YHVH your Elohim will restore you from captivity, and have compassion on you, and will gather you again from all the peoples where YHVH your Elohim has scattered you. (4) If your outcasts are at the ends of the earth, from there YHVH your Elohim will gather you, and from there He will bring you back. (5) And YHVH your Elohim will bring you into the land which your fathers possessed, and you shall possess it; and He will prosper you and multiply you more than your fathers. (6) Moreover YHVH your Elohim will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, in order that you may live. (7) And YHVH your Elohim will inflict all these curses on your enemies and on those who hate you, who persecuted you. (8) And you shall again obey YHVH, and observe all His commandments which I commanded you today.”***

We need to make an about turn. No sin is too small to overlook and no sin is too big to be repented of. We read in Matthew 4: 17 ***‘From that time Yahshua began to preach and say, “Repent,***

for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.” Salvation is in obedience. We need to make sure that at this time our repentance is not a worldly sorrow, but a sorrow unto repentance as quoted here from verses 9 & 10 of 2 Corinthians 7: ***‘I now rejoice, not that you were made sorrowful, but that you were made sorrowful to the point of repentance; for you were made sorrowful according to the will of Elohim, in order that you might not suffer loss in anything through us. (10) For the sorrow that is according to the will of Elohim produces a repentance without regret, leading to salvation; but the sorrow of the world produces death.’*** If we want to be Israel, we will have to be overcomers. However, repentance is a gift of YHVH and only a little flock will receive the kingdom at this time.

Let us the called out ones determine to obey YHVH. Let us get out of the Babylon of confusion and their pagan practices, and let us proclaim the good news about the coming kingdom of Elohim as a witness (not to convert them) to all nations, then the end of this age will come.

Chapter 25: Days of Unleavened Bread.

Why do we keep the days of unleavened bread? Is it to afflict our gums or to upset our metabolism? Or is it because we know or think we are Israelites or perhaps Jewish?

NO! We keep these Set-Apart Days because YHVH commands us to keep His Set-Apart Days. Yes, these are (YHVH)'s Set-Apart Days and not Jewish Holy Days. We read accordingly in Leviticus 23: 1, 2 & 4: ***‘YHVH spoke again to Moses saying, “Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, ‘YHVH (Elohim’s) appointed times which you (Moses – or those who sit in Moses’ seat) shall proclaim as Set-apart convocations – My appointed times are these.” (4) These are the appointed times of YHVH, Set-apart convocations which you shall proclaim at the times (seasons) appointed for them.’***

We also keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread, because it is a sign between the Eternal and us. A sign which indicates to YHVH, that we want to keep His Commandments. In Exodus 13: 6 - 9 we read: ***“For seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, and on the seventh day there shall be a feast to YHVH. (7) Unleavened bread shall be eaten throughout the seven days; and nothing leavened shall be seen among you, nor shall any leaven be seen among you in all your borders. (8) And you shall tell your son (children) on that day, saying, ‘It is because of what YHVH did for me when I came out of Egypt.’ (9) And it shall serve as a sign to you on your hand, and as a reminder on your forehead, that the Law of YHVH may be in your mouth; for with a powerful hand YHVH brought you out of Egypt.”***

As much as Elohim saved Israel from slavery in Egypt, He saved us from lives of sin. We know through scripture that Yahshua the Messiah ***“The Lamb of Elohim”***, died for us, was buried and raised again on the third day. By doing so He gave us the victory over death. We read this in 1 Corinthians 15: 20 – 22: ***‘But now Messiah has been raised from the dead, the first fruit of those who are asleep. (21) For since by man came***

death, by a man also came the resurrection of the dead. (22) For as in Adam all die, so also in Messiah all shall be made alive. We read further in 1 Corinthians 15: 55 – 57: **“O DEATH, WHERE IS YOUR VICTORY? O DEATH, WHERE IS YOUR STING?”** (56) **The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law;** (57) **but thanks be to Elohim, who gives us the victory through our Master Yahshua Messiah.** As a result we and most men and woman have an opportunity to become part of the Spiritual family of YHVH.

The next step after the Passover is the Days of Unleavened Bread. It follows therefore that, after the Messiah's sacrifice to forgive our sins, we have to continue to avoid sin, as we must continue to live in newness of life.

How do we live as Elohim's redeemed people?

The answer is in the symbolism of the Feast of Unleavened Bread.

YHVH instructed the Israelites concerning the festival as they prepared to leave Egypt in Exodus 12: 15 & 16, as follows: **'Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, but on the first day you shall remove leaven from your houses; for whoever eats anything leavened from the first day until the seventh day, that person shall be cut off from Israel.'** Wow, this means that if the Scriptures are correct about the Jews being Elohim's lawgiver (as per Psalm 60:7 & Genesis 49: 10) and the fact that YHVH do not change (as per Malachi 3: 6 & Hebrews 13; 8), and we start eating unleavened bread a day or two later, that we will be cut off from Israel? (16) **'And on the first day you shall have a Set-apart assembly, and another Set-apart assembly on the seventh day; no work at all shall be done on them, except what must be eaten by every person, that alone may be prepared by you.'** Note that, other than on the weekly Sabbath and the Day of Atonement (Yom Kippur), no work must be done on these days of 'rest' or annual Sabbaths as well, except you may prepare food on the annual Sabbaths or Set-apart Days. Therefore a weekly Sabbath may precede or

follow a normal Set-apart Day, but the same is not true for the Day of Atonement, where the postponement rule is applied.

For those folks who say that the Set-apart Days of Elohim are not referred to as annual Sabbaths in the Scriptures, herewith a few Scriptural witnesses where the Set-apart Days are called Sabbaths: In the Tanach; Compare Exodus 31: 13 & 16 (v13 talks about Sabbaths and v16 the Sabbath being perpetual signs); Leviticus 23: 32 (talks about the Day of Atonement as a Sabbath); as well as in the Renewed Covenant: John 19: 31, as follows: ***'The Jews therefore, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.'*** This Sabbath spoken about here in John 19 is by the way the same annual Sabbath that we read about in Leviticus 23: 11 and 15. This is the First Day of Unleavened Bread and not the weekly Sabbath as some interpret it to be. Here the Scriptures are interpreting the Scriptures. The Omer is counted from the day after the First Day of Unleavened Bread and not the weekly Sabbath! Do you believe that?

The word Sabbath according to the Gesenius Hebrew Lexicon does not mean "the seventh day of the week" but rather 'to rest' or 'to cease/to desist' or 'to celebrate the Sabbath.' The primary meaning is simply to REST, cease from labor. It is also the name of the seventh day of the week, but this is not the primary meaning of the word. In Leviticus 25 we read in verse 4 that we also have Sabbath years. In addition we see (in the second witness to Leviticus 23: 15), in Deuteronomy 16: 19, Elohim, says clearly, that we are to count seven weeks – the Hebrew name for the Feast of Pentecost is Hag HaShavuot which literally means 'Feast of weeks' and not the 'Feast of Sabbaths' So why would Elohim inspire the use of the term 'Sabbath' in Leviticus 23:15. The Greek Septuagint of the Tanach was written in 250 BCE, long before there was any controversy, and a full 80 years prior to the appearance of the religious sects of the Sadducees and the Pharisees. The Septuagint plainly states that we are to count from the day after the First Day of the Feast of Unleavened

Bread, as the Pharisees also teach. The main reason for the controversy was because the Sadducees claimed that we are to count from the weekly Sabbath, during the days of Unleavened Bread.

Each year when we keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread, it reminds us, as it did our fore-fathers, that YHVH delivered us from sin. We learn best by doing. We learn a Spiritual lesson by doing the physical: By de-leavening our homes and offices, it reminds us to watch diligently for sin and sinful thoughts and to avoid them. In His day the Messiah warned His disciples to be careful of the leaven of the Pharisees, which was the fact that some members of the religious establishment in His day appeared righteous, but secretly practiced sin.

The leaven of the Pharisees was hypocrisy; we must not be hypocrites. We must therefore not only appear righteous, we must over the period of seven days de-leaven our lives of sin and become righteous, with the help of the Messiah. Our observance of the Days of Unleavened Bread helps us realize our need for the Messiah's help in overcoming our weaknesses.

This Feast is a time to rejoice, because the Messiah freely gives us the help we need. Yahshua was sacrificed for the forgiveness of our sins, therefore, even though we have a part to play in the de-leavening of our lives, which pictures our ongoing struggle to overcome sin. We must learn to rely on YHVH and Yahshua HaMashiach to help us in this battle.

Chapter 26: Between the evenings – what does it mean?

Faith is a very personal thing and no one can expect anyone else to see and believe things exactly the way they do. One of my teachers used to put it like this: “Do not believe what I teach, before you checked it out for yourself. But, make sure that you use only the word of YHVH (or The Scriptures) to confirm or reject a teaching, using at least two or three Scriptural witnesses.” This statement by my teacher was in line with what we read in 2 Peter 1: 20 & 21³³, as follows: ***‘But know this first of all, that no prophecy of Scriptures is a matter of one’s own interpretation, (21) for no prophesy was ever made by an act of human will, but men moved by the Set-apart Spirit spoke from Elohim.’***

YHVH does not speak to us directly any longer and some of those who come to us saying that: “The Spirit laid it upon my heart, to tell you this or that”, are simply tricking themselves. We read in Hebrews 1: 1 & 2 accordingly: ***‘Elohim, after He spoke long ago to the fathers in the prophets in many portions and in many ways, (2) in these last days has spoken to us in His Son, whom He appointed heir of all things, through whom also He made the world.’*** In addition we read in 1 John 4: 1 – 3 ***‘Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits to see whether they are from Elohim; because many false prophets have gone out into the world. (2) By this you know the Spirit of Elohim: every spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh is from Elohim; (3) and every spirit that does not confess Yahshua is not from Elohim; and this is the spirit of the anti-Messiah, of which you have heard that is coming, and now it is already in the world.’*** What is the meaning of the statement: “that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh?” This implies that Yahshua was somewhere else before He was born as a ‘man’. Knowing the Scriptures, we are able to confirm this in John 1: 1 – 3 and 14, as follows: ***‘In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. (2) He was in the***

³³ *New American Standard Bible quoted throughout, unless otherwise indicated.*

beginning with Elohim. (3) All things came into being by Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being³⁴. (14) And the word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.' Yes, Yahshua is Elohim in the flesh: Immanuel, Elohim with us. So how do we interpret the Scriptures, today? We use (Yahshua), the word of YHVH, to interpret the Scriptures, or put differently: Let the Scriptures interpret the Scriptures.

That brings me to the point that I would like to discuss today. I will use many different translations to substantiate what I want to say, and would like you to do the same when you need to convict yourself of truth. Carefully reading the words of Leviticus 23: 5 and the first part of verse 6, in The Jewish Bible (JPS 1917)³⁵, we notice that the Passover and the first day of Unleavened Bread are distinguished as separate and certainly not combined, as follows: (5) **'In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at dusk, is HaShem'S Passover.** (6) **And on the fifteenth day of the same month is the feast of unleavened bread unto HaShem.'** The same passage in the New American Standard Bible³⁶, reads: (5) **'In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at twilight is the LORD'S (YHVH) Passover.** (6) **Then on the fifteenth day of the same month there is the Feast of Unleavened Bread to the LORD (YHVH).'** As English speakers we are familiar with both the terms 'at dusk' and 'at twilight' and know that it simply means in the evening, or 'at even' as it reads in the King James Version (KJV). But, when reading Leviticus 23: 5 in the KJV, we notice the reference against the phrase; 'at even' refers us to Exodus 12: 6.

In Exodus 12: 6 according to the KJV, we read: **'And ye shall keep it up until the fourteenth day of the same month: and**

³⁴ Elohim created the universe by the word of YHVH, as is confirmed in Psalm 33: 6.

³⁵ This is a direct quote from the Jewish Bible, and I made no changes to the text.

³⁶ Again this is a direct quote from the New American Standard Bible and according to the foreword of this Bible, the Name YHVH was consistently translated as LORD throughout this version.

the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it in the evening.’ Again we read the reference against the underlined phrase in the quoted verse, stating that the Hebrew reads: ***‘between the two evenings’***. In fact Leviticus 23: 5 in The Septuagint version of the Tanach reads: ***“In the first month, on the fourteenth of the month, between the two evenings, is the Passover for the LORD (YHVH).”*** The Hebrew transliteration for ‘between the two evenings’, is ‘Bayn-HaErbayim’ and most of us are aware of the big controversy centered mainly on the phrase “Bayn-HaErbayim.” Many assert that this phrase means afternoon till dark, a six hour period or between the sunsets occurring at the beginning and the ending of the day, a 24 hour period. Bayn-HaErbayim is a Hebrew phrase in which the word ‘Erev’ is in the dual plural form, and it means literally, between the two evenings. In the Hebrew language, there are two plural forms: The poly plural; meaning any number higher than one; and the dual plural, meaning two and only two. As we have seen in the Jewish Bible (JPS 1917), Bayn-HaErbayim is translated as dusk (in the JPS 1917 version) or twilight (other JPS versions).

The Hebrew expression is only found in the Scriptures, according to authorities. It appears 11 times in the Scriptures and it clearly means the same as twilight in English, i.e. that period of time after sunset, when there is enough light to perform such tasks as lighting the lamps before dark. In Exodus 30: 7 & 8 we read a very clear example and explanation, as follows: ***“And Aaron shall burn fragrant incense on it; he shall burn it every morning, when he trims the lamps. (8) And when Aaron trims the lamps at twilight, he shall burn incense. There shall be perpetual incense before YHVH throughout your generations.***’ This clearly shows that Aaron shall burn incense in the morning and in the evening, when he trims the lamps in the morning and lights it again in the evening. One would not expect the Tabernacle lamps to be lit at noon or even at 3 p.m. in the afternoon. A second place where we read about the phrase ‘Bayn-HaErbayim’ is in Exodus 16: 12 & 13, as follows: ***“I have heard the grumbings of the sons of Israel; speak to them, saying, ‘At between the two evenings***

(twilight) ***you shall eat meat, and in the morning you shall be filled with bread; and you shall know that I am YHVH your Elohim.*** (13) ***So it came about at evening that the quails came up and covered the camp, and in the morning there was a layer of dew around the camp.***” The layer of dew spoken about here was the manna that YHVH gave the people of Israel to eat in the morning. We also see clearly how the Scriptures interpret ***‘between the two evenings’*** in verse 12 to mean ***‘at evening’*** in verse 13.

The quails came in the evening as we read in Exodus 16: 8, ***‘And Moses said, “This will happen when YHVH gives you meat to eat in the evening, and bread to the full in the morning; for YHVH hears your grumblings which you grumble against Him. And what are we? Your grumblings are not against us but against YHVH.”***” Note that in verse 12 and 13 of Exodus 16, two different Hebrew terms are used. In verse 12 we see the phrase ***‘between the two evenings’*** (or Bayn-HaErbayim) and in verse 13, we see the phrase ***‘at evening’*** (or Erev) being used. ***‘Between the two evenings’*** according to verse 13, indicates that it would happen after sunset and before the next morning. ***‘Between the two evenings’*** is the period of time between sunset and full dark, or twilight time. The first evening is at sunset; when the sun gives up dominion and the second evening commences when the stars gain dominion in the night sky. The Passover is a memorial to YHVH for saving our forefathers from their slavery in Egypt. It is a dinner in honor of the King of the Universe. Note that in Exodus 12 from verse 6 onward, everything occurred in the same night, a time period of 12 hours in the evening (night) of the 14th of Aviv. The Passover lamb was to be slain ***‘between the two evenings’*** of the 14th. Then the blood of the lamb was to be used to mark the door posts and the lintels of the homes of the Israelites (verse 7). The same night they were to eat the meat roasted over the fire, along with bitter herbs, and unleavened bread (verse 8).

The expression ***‘that same night’*** used in verse 8 is another Hebrew phrase ***“B’Lailah HaZeh”*** meaning ***‘at night’***. ***‘HaZeh’***, meaning ***‘the same’***. In verse 12 the phrase ***‘that same night’*** is

used again indicating that YHVH will strike that very night. We see in verse 22 that after the Israelites put the blood on the doorposts and lintels of their homes they had to stay indoors until morning. We see further in verse 29 that YHVH struck the Egyptians at midnight (on the same night – i.e. the 14th of Aviv). The Passover lamb is killed, roasted and eaten on the same night, and YHVH passed over their homes that very same night. Since Exodus 12: 6 shows that ***'you shall keep it until the fourteenth day'*** and shall ***'kill it'*** shows that it had to be killed on the 14th. The lamb had to be slaughtered some time during the 24 hours of the 14th. Either it was done at the beginning or at the end of the 14th. Next we need to consider at what time on the 14th of Aviv was the lamb slaughtered. The questions already answered are:

1. It was killed on the 14th (verse 6).
2. It had to be eaten that same night (verse 8).
3. YHVH struck the Egyptians at midnight of that same night (verses 12 and 29).

There is only one night of the 14th – which occurs during the first 12 hours from sunset to sunrise. It is therefore clear that the lamb was killed after sunset on the 13th, but before midnight the 14th, when the Israelites had to eat the roasted lamb. Therefore all Passover events happened on the same night, between sunset and sunrise the 14th of Aviv. There was much to be done before YHVH struck the Egyptians and no time could be wasted. More evidence of when the lamb was slaughtered is found in Deuteronomy 16: 6 (KJV), as follows: ***'But at the place which YHVH thy Elohim shall choose to place His name in, there thou shalt sacrifice the Passover at even, at the going down of the sun, at the season that thou camest forth out of Egypt.'*** This phrase 'at the going down of the sun' or at sundown is transliterated as 'Bo' in Hebrew (according to Strong's 935). When this phrase is used together with sun, it means set or go. The Passover was sacrificed at sundown and Israel left Egypt the next night after sundown, by the light of the full moon on the 15th of Aviv. The following verses also use the word 'Bo' and clearly show that it means at sundown: Genesis 15: 12, ***'Now when the sun was going down, a deep sleep fell upon***

Abram'; Genesis 28: 11: **'the sun had set'**; and Deuteronomy 23: 11: **'at sundown'**.

Now that we know when the original Passover occurred, let us look at the timing of the last Passover, which our Master Yahshua the Messiah partook of. Let us turn to Luke 22 verses 8, 14 to 16 and 20 where we read: **'And He (Yahshua) sent Peter and John, saying, "Go and prepare the Passover for us, that we may eat it."** (some insist that Yahshua did not partake of the Passover - was He fooling His disciples here, or is this a mistranslation?) (14) **'And when the hour had come He reclined at the table, and the apostles with Him. (15) And He said to them, "I have earnestly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer; (16) for I say to you, I shall never again eat it until it is fulfilled in the Kingdom of Elohim."** (Some say that the last two verses show that He did not eat the Passover at that time. However, to me it is saying that that was the last time that He ate it, and will only eat it again when He returns, one day.) (20) **'And in the same way He took the cup after they had eaten, saying, "This cup which is the new covenant in My blood."**

For another witness regarding this new covenant in Yahshua's blood, let's turn to 1 Corinthians 11: 20 – 26 (which is not often quoted by those who hold that Yahshua did not partake of the Passover before He died), where we read: **'Therefore when you meet together, it is not to eat the Masters Supper** (those that say that Yahshua did not eat the Passover before His death, hold that the meal He ate was the Masters Supper – but this verse states exactly the opposite). (21) **for in your eating each one takes his own supper first; and one is hungry and another is drunk. (22) What! Do you not have houses in which to eat and drink? Or do you despise the ecclesia of Elohim, and shame those who have nothing? What shall I say to you? Shall I praise you? In this I will not praise you. (23) For I received from the Master that which I also delivered to you, that the Master Yahshua in the night in which He was betrayed took bread; (24) and when He had given thanks, He broke it, and said, "This is My body, which**

is for you; do this in remembrance of Me.” (25) In the same way He took the cup also, after supper, saying, “This is the cup of the new covenant in My blood; do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me.” (26) For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Master’s death until He comes.’ To me it is clear that we should follow Rav Shaul as He followed Messiah, as is recorded in 1 Corinthians 11: 1 & 2. The night during which Yahshua was betrayed was 24 hours before the Jews of His day, ate the Passover. In fact 24 hours later, when they ate the Passover, Yahshua was already in the grave.

At this point I would like to quote from a paper that Dr James Scott Trimm, from the Society for the Advancement of Nazarene Judaism, sent me during June 2006. The paper is entitled: ‘The Two Covenants of the Torah.’ Dr Trimm wrote on the bottom of page 6 of this article: *“At Yeshua’s so-called ‘Last Supper’ which was a Passover Seder, Yeshua holds up the third cup of the Passover Seder known as the ‘cup of redemption’ and said ‘Drink you all of it, for this is my blood of the New Covenant, which is shed for many to atone for sinners. And I tell you, hereafter I will not drink of the fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it with you in the Kingdom of my Father which is in heaven.’* (This is quoted from Matthew 26: 27 – 29 in the ‘Du Tillet’ Hebrew version of Matthew). *Here Yeshua tells us that the ‘cup of redemption’ which represents the blood of the Passover Lamb, represents his own blood which will be the ratifying blood of the New Covenant.”*

I therefore believe that the original Passover occurred in the evening of the 14th of Aviv, as the 13th of Aviv came to a close and that Yahshua also partook of the Passover in the evening of the 14th of Aviv, the night before He was impaled. To conclude, I would like you to consider the admonishing by Rav Shaul, recorded in Hebrews 10: 28 & 29, ***‘Anyone who has set aside the Law of Moses dies without mercy on the testimony of two or three witnesses. (29) How much severer punishment do you think he will deserve who has trampled under foot the Son of Elohim, and has regarded as unclean the blood***

of the covenant by which he was sanctified, and has insulted the Spirit of grace? Do not be uninformed, the Passover is not eaten on the evening of the First Day of Unleavened Bread or the 15th of Aviv, as some insist: The Passover and the First Day of Unleavened Bread occur on two separate dates, as is revealed by this sermon and confirmed in Numbers 28: 16 & 17, as follows: ***'Then on the fourteenth day of the first month shall be YHVH (Elohim's) Passover. (17) And on the fifteenth day of this month shall be a feast, unleavened bread shall be eaten for seven days.'*** Passover is a memorial proclaiming the Messiah's death, until He comes. Yes, we eat unleavened bread on the night of the Passover, but in this case it represents the Unleavened Bread, being the sinless Body of our Master. Normal bread may be eaten after the Passover, and during the day part of the fourteenth of Aviv, but it should be totally removed from our homes, before the next evening, the 15th of Aviv, when the Feast of Unleavened Bread starts.

Chapter 27: The timing of the Passover according to the Nazarene System.

The timing of the Passover has been debated by scholars for many years. The Renewed Covenant clearly place the Passover kept by Yahshua and His disciples on the beginning of the 14th of Aviv, the evening during which Yahshua was betrayed. The Rabbinic understanding where the Passover commences at the end of the 14th of Aviv, with the 15th of Aviv as the High Sabbath was also the understanding of the Pharisees and Priests at the time of Messiah. However, it will be noted in this writing that this was not the Nazarene understanding, because they placed Passover a day before. It will furthermore be demonstrated that the Nazarene understanding was also preserved in the Tanach.

A popular theory by those who say that Yahshua did not Partake of the Passover, is that Yahshua kept a mock Passover with His disciples the evening prior to the actual Passover taking place. They say that He was only showing them how to keep it the next evening and in the future, because He knew that He will be the Passover Lamb, the next evening. However, we read in the four Gospels that Yahshua and His disciples *'kept the Passover', 'that we may eat it (Passover)', and 'prepared the Passover'*. The argument that the Passover that Yahshua kept was only a practice run, or mock Passover is usually "proven" by making use of Luke 22: 15 – 18, as follows: ***'And He (Yahshua) said to them, "I have earnestly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer; (16) for I say to you, I shall never again eat it until it is fulfilled in the Kingdom of Elohim."*** (17) ***And when He had taken a cup and given thanks, He said, "Take this and share it among yourselves; (18) for I say to you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine from now on until the kingdom of Elohim comes."*** However, reading from verse 8 on to verse 22, we see that Yahshua actually ate this Passover, but would not eat it again until He comes to rule the world from Jerusalem. The theory of the mock Passover is presented saying that Yahshua really wanted to keep the Passover, yet wasn't going to be able to, because the actual Passover was only suppose to occur on the next afternoon after 3pm. Others insist

that Yahshua took a Nazirite vow and could not partake of the Passover, because he could not drink any wine. However, there is no indication in the Scriptures that Yahshua ever took a Nazirite vow, instead we read His own words in Luke 7: 33 and 34, as follows: ***“For John the Immerser has come eating no bread and drinking no wine; and you say, ‘He has a demon!’ (34) The Son of Man has come eating and drinking; and you say, ‘Behold a gluttonous man, and a drunkard, a friend of tax-gatherers and sinners!’***

The second reason why some say that Yahshua did not partake of the Passover is: because He referred to the cup of wine as the New Covenant in His blood, and since the new covenant will only be inaugurated when the kingdom of Elohim comes, He will only drink it at that time. However, absolutely nothing in the Renewed Covenant supports the theory of a mock Passover. Nowhere do we find His disciples gathered together the next evening keeping the Passover. They scattered after Yahshua was arrested and did not come together again until after His resurrection.

The Nazarene system of keeping the Passover season is an eight day system, having Passover occurring on the 14th and seven days of unleavened bread follows from the 15th through the 21st of Aviv. To show this from the Tanach, let us examine the meaning of the text in Exodus 12, where we read in verse 6 ***‘And you shall keep it until the fourteenth day of the same month, then the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel is to kill it at twilight.’*** Continuing in verse 14 of Exodus 12, we read: ***‘Now this is a memorial to you, and you shall celebrate it as a feast to YHVH; throughout your generations you are to celebrate it as a permanent ordinance.’***

Exodus 12: 6 and 14 establishes the 14th of Aviv as a memorial and a feast day to be kept throughout Israel’s generations. When reading the entire chapter of Leviticus 23, you will notice that there are seven annual feasts. Two of them are seven days long. You will also notice seven annual holy days. But each of them is only one day long. Each of the holy days occurs on, or during, a feast. But the Passover, the first feast, is not a holy

day. *All holy days are Sabbaths*, during which normal work may not be done. But the Passover, the very first of the annual festivals of YHVH, is not a holy day, nor is it an annual Sabbath.

Continuing on in Exodus 12: 15, we read: ***‘Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, but on the first day you shall remove leaven from your houses; for whoever eats anything leavened from the first day until the seventh day, that person shall be cut off from Israel.’*** Now, if we follow chronologically, the seven day period of Unleavened Bread, commences after Passover. The key phrase ***‘first day’*** needs some attention. The Hebrew word which appears as “first” in this verse is “*roshown*”. The word “*roshown*” may be translated as ‘head’, ‘chief’, ‘former or before.’ The Hebrew language is in the main a contextual language with its terms relying on what surrounds them. The word ‘*roshown*’ is translated as ‘former or before’ in:

Numbers 6: 12 ***‘and shall dedicate to YHVH his days as a Nazirite, and shall bring a male lamb a year old for a guilt offering; but the former days shall be void because his separation was defiled.’***

Joshua 8: 33 (second part) ***‘Moses the servant of YHVH had commanded before, that they should bless the people of Israel.*** (KJV).’ However, in this case note that the New American Standard Bible reads: ***‘just as Moses the servant of YHVH, had given command at first to bless the people of Israel.’***

1 Kings 13: 6 ***‘And the king answered and said to the man of Elohim, “Please entreat YHVH your Elohim, and pray for me, that my hand be restored to me.” So the man of Elohim entreated YHVH, and the king’s hand was restored to him, and it became as it was before.’***

The viable meaning of the Hebrew word ‘*roshown*’ as before is also verified by the ancient classic translations, namely the Septuagint (LXX) and the Peshitta Tanach. The Greek Septuagint translation has here “*prote*” which means essentially the exact same thing as “*roshown*”. The Peshitta Aramaic

Tanach has “*kadmaya*” from the Aramaic root “*k’dam*” meaning ‘before.’ All these words for ‘before’ are translated as such, when there is context to place what follows it after what is just mentioned. For example “*roshown*” is translated as ‘before’ in the phrase “*first of the month*” because there is nothing to place this month before. However, in Exodus 12 15 – 19, we shall show how the Nazarene System, is clearly evident:

12: 15 ‘Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, but on the first day you shall remove leaven from your houses; for whoever eats anything leavened from the first day until the seventh day, that person shall be cut off from Israel.

12: 16 ‘And on the first day you shall have a holy assembly, and another holy assembly on the seventh day; no work at all shall be done on them, except what must be eaten by every person, that alone may be prepared by you.

12: 17 ‘You shall also observe the Feast of Unleavened Bread, for on this very day I brought your hosts out of the land of Egypt; therefore you shall observe this day throughout your generations as a permanent ordinance.

12: 18 ‘In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at evening, you shall eat unleavened bread, until the twenty-first day of the month at evening.

12: 19 ‘Seven days there shall be no leaven found in your houses; for whoever eats what is leavened, that person shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel, whether he is an alien or a native of the land.’

Verse 17 affirms that the 15th of Aviv is day one of the seven days of unleavened bread, because we know from Numbers 33: 3 that the day in which Israel was brought out of Egypt was the 15th day of the first month; on the next day after the Passover. From Leviticus 23 and Deuteronomy 16, it is apparent that there are actually eight days in which unleavened bread is eaten, that is, from the 14th through the 21st, but that there are only seven days (15th – 21st) in which leaven is forbidden in dwellings. For clarity purposes we will at this point focus on the preposition “*until*” in verse 18 as it is dealt with in Hebrew. The Hebrew word here is “*ad*” which can mean ‘*during, even, unto, equally with*’. It

is clear that the Hebrew preposition “ad” may or may not include the direct object in its usage. However, “ad” in these instances includes the direct object which would be the 21st. The phrase **“until the twenty-first day of the month at evening”** is best interpreted chronologically just as it appears, i.e. after the 21st; there is an evening at which the feast ends.

This understanding is supported by Leviticus 23: 32, as follows: **“It is to be a sabbath of complete rest to you, and you shall humble your souls; on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening until evening you shall keep your sabbath.”** Here the fast for the Day of Atonement is started after the 9th at evening, but we know that the fast is on the 10th as per Leviticus 23: 27. Therefore, the evening that follows the ninth is the evening of the 10th. The point is one of succession of chronology as it relates to the phrase **“until the twenty-first day of the month at evening”** – the evening referred to in Exodus 12: 18 is therefore the evening that comes after the 21st.

The key to understanding the Passover is found in Leviticus 23: 5 – 8;

23: 5 ‘In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at twilight is (YHVH)’s Passover.

23: 6 ‘Then on the fifteenth day of the same month there is the Feast of Unleavened Bread to YHVH for seven days you shall eat unleavened bread.

23: 7 ‘On the first day you shall have a holy convocation; you shall not do any laborious work.

23: 8 ‘But for seven days you shall present an offering by fire to YHVH. On the seventh day is a holy convocation; you shall not do any laborious work.’

In verse 5, as in Exodus 12: 6, it shows that the Passover is to be kept on the 14th Aviv. In verse 6, as in Exodus 12: 17, it shows that the 15th of Aviv is the day that Israel left Egypt (as per Numbers 33: 3) and that this is the day in which the seven days of unleavened bread begins, and during which only unleavened bread may be found in our homes. Verse 7 and 8 show that as in

Exodus 12: 16 the first and seventh days of unleavened bread are days on which Set-apart convocations are to be held. Interestingly, we see in verse 8 of Leviticus 23, that seven days are mentioned in which burnt offerings were to be made – the timing of which follows the day of Passover and starts on the 15th of Aviv. The same may also be seen in Numbers 28: 16 – 25.

From the Renewed Covenant we know that Yahshua kept the Passover the evening of the 14th of Aviv, and that He was impaled, and buried on the day of preparation before the High Sabbath of the 15th of Aviv, as may be read in John 19: 31

The understanding of an eight day system for the Passover and Unleavened Bread is affirmed by Josephus in a statement that he made as recorded in Jos. Antiq. 2:15:1 “...we keep a feast for eight days which is called unleavened bread.” Further details are given in a statement by Josephus at Jos. Antiq.3:10:5 “*In the month of Xanthicus, which is by us called Nisan (also known as Aviv), and is the beginning of our year. On the fourteenth day of the lunar month, when the sun is in Aries, (for in this month it was that we were delivered from bondage under the Egyptians) the law ordained that we should every year slay that sacrifice which I before told you we slew when we came out of Egypt, and which was called the Passover, and so we do celebrate this Passover in companies, leaving nothing of what we sacrifice till the day following. The feast of unleavened bread succeeds that of the Passover, and falls on the fifteenth day of the month, and continues seven days, wherein they feed on unleavened bread; on every one of which days two bulls are killed, and one ram, and seven lambs. Now these lambs are entirely burnt, besides the kid of the goats which is added to all the rest, for sins; for it is intended as a feast for the priest on every one of those days. But on the second day of unleavened bread, which is the sixteenth day of the month, they first partake of the fruits of the earth, for before that day they do not touch them.*”

This also confirms our counting of the Omer from the 16th of Aviv when we also eat of the produce of the land, unleavened bread and parched grain as may be confirmed in Joshua 5: 10 -11.

Chapter 28: The great falling away.

The original believers in Yahshua were from a sect of Judaism, identified as Nazarenes in Acts 24: 5. Since the commencement of Nazarene Judaism, evil forces determined to destroy it and because of sustained attacks the movement almost vanished by the fourth century. However, it never totally died out, as there have always been Torah observant individuals who believed in Yahshua as their Messiah. This is in line with the words of Yahshua in Matthew 16: 18, where He said that the ecclesia built upon the Rock (meaning Himself), shall remain (the gates of Hades {death} shall not overpower it), until He returns. The evil forces against us are the same forces that are against our Jewish brothers, namely Lawlessness or ANOMOS.

Rav Shaul in his address to the Ephesian elders in Acts 20: 29 & 30 said: ***“I know that after my departure savage wolves will come in among you, not sparing the flock; (30) and from among your own selves men will arise, speaking perverse things, to draw the disciples after them.”*** In fact the great falling away is an essential part of the end time events that will proceed the coming of Yahshua our messiah, as we read in 2 Thessalonians 2: 1 – 3: ***‘Now we request you, brethren, with regard to the coming of our Master Yahshua Messiah, and our gathering together to Him. (2) that you may not be quickly shaken from your composure or be disturbed either by a spirit or a message or a letter as if from us, to the effect that the day of YHVH has come. (3) Let no one in any way deceive you, for it will not come unless the apostasy (falling away) comes first, and the man of lawlessness is revealed, the son of destruction.’***

We read about the great falling away, during the last days in both the Tanach and the Renewed Covenant. The falling away will be mainly due to deception, by the Priests in Israel. We read in Micah 3: 5 – 7: ***‘Thus says YHVH concerning the prophets Who lead my people astray; When they have something to bite with their teeth, They cry, “Peace,” But against him who puts nothing in their mouths, They declare holy war. (6)***

Therefore it will be night for you - without vision, And darkness for you – without divination. The sun will go down on the prophets, And the day will become dark over them. (7) The seers will be ashamed And the diviners will be embarrassed. Indeed they will all cover their mouths Because there is no answer from Elohim.’ As I have said in teachings before, we might have an idea when the end is near, but only YHVH knows the exact time of the events that will soon overtake the world, as Yahshua indicated in Matthew 24: 36, as follows: **“But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, nor the Son, but the Father alone.”** We have even in our time, seen the embarrassment of many prophets – so the prophesy in Micah 3 has already come true in our time. If we want to rule under Yahshua in the kingdom of Elohim, we need to remain loyal; we need to believe and study the word of YHVH and proclaim the coming Kingdom of Elohim. It is only by so doing that we will become kings and priest, as Yahshua confirmed in Matthew 24: 46 & 47, saying: **“Blessed is that slave whom his master finds so doing when he comes. (47) Truly I say to you, that he will put him in charge of all his possessions.”**

In the Renewed Covenant we read about the great apostasy in Matthew 24: 10 - 12, Yahshua saying: **‘And at that time many will fall away and will deliver up one another and hate one another. (11) And many false prophets will arise, and will mislead many. (12) And because of lawlessness is increased, most people’s love (for Torah truth) will grow cold.’** After having been called, we need to bear fruit; we need to grow in grace and knowledge, as we read in 2 Peter 3: 18. In the parable of the seed in Luke 8: 15 – 18, Yahshua warns: **“And the seed in the good soil, these are the ones who have heard the word in an honest and good heart, and hold it fast, and bear fruit with perseverance. (16) Now no one after lighting a lamp covers it over with a container, or put it under a bed; but he puts it on a lampstand, in order that those who come in may see the light. (17) For nothing is hidden that shall not become evident, nor anything secret that shall not be known and come to light. (18) Therefore**

take care how you listen; for whoever has, to him shall more be given, and whoever does not have, even what he thinks he has shall be taken away from him.” We also read about the great apostasy in 1 Timothy 4: 1 – 2, as follows: ***‘But the spirit explicitly says that in the latter times some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to deceitful spirits and doctrines of demons, (2) by means of hypocrisy of liars seared in their own conscience as with a branding iron.’*** Many of those whom YHVH has called in the past have left again, to follow people who contradict YHVH and Yahshua (the word of Elohim): People stopped believing in the Oneness of Elohim and others contradict the word of Elohim, denying that Judah is the Lawgiver of Elohim, as may be read in among other Romans 3: 1 – 2 and Psalm 60: 7. Others left because we are performing our function as watchmen (Nazarenes); writing warning sermons such as these to warn believers against wrongdoing, impending troubles, and proclaiming the good news.

Our commission is to proclaim the coming kingdom of Elohim, as Yahshua did immediately after His immersion and temptation (by the Adversary). Ask yourself today: Why am I here? Am I here to save my own skin, or am I here to do what Yahshua did, i.e. proclaiming the good news of the coming kingdom of Elohim, despite the consequences. We do not proclaim the kingdom of Elohim to anyone, by moving into a secluded little town, and live out the rest of our lives as hermits. This is much like we have read in Luke 8, about hiding our light under a bushel. We need to reflect the kingdom of Elohim (be it in a limited and imperfect way) and do the work of believing in the one whom He has sent, here and now. We read the words of Yahshua regarding this in Matthew 16: 24 & 25, as follows: ***“If anyone wishes to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me. (25) For whoever wishes to save his life shall lose it; but whoever loses his life for My sake shall find it.”*** We also read in Luke 12: 31: ***“But seek for His kingdom, and these things shall be added to you.”*** When we are busy about our Father’s business, He will both protect us and provide in our every need.

Yes, life is going to become very hard in the near future, but we have the commission to keep telling people about the better world that is coming soon; we have to proclaim the kingdom of Elohim to all the world, then the end will come (Matthew 24: 14). We do not go out on street corners and shout for people to repent, because we know according to John 6: 44, that YHVH does the calling. However, the internet is a very good tool to get the message of the coming kingdom of Elohim out into the world. But we need sound doctrine, proven by at least two or three Scriptural witnesses to get Scriptural truth into the world. In addition we need hard copies of material to get to those without internet access, or who find it easier to read printed material. Only the naïve do not realize that the time to do the end time work is getting short. Soon there will be a famine of the word, when people will not hear the word of YHVH any longer, as we read in Amos 8: 11 – 12: ***“Behold, days are coming,” declares YHVH Elohim, “When I will send a famine on the land, Not a famine for bread or a thirst for water, But rather for hearing the words of YHVH. (12) And people will stagger from sea to sea, And from north even to the east; they will go to and fro to seek the word of YHVH, But they will not find it.”***

We read in 1 Timothy 4: 1 that ***‘some will fall away from the faith.’*** What does it mean to fall away from the faith? Which faith? There is only one faith according to Ephesians 4: 5, which was once delivered to the saints – the called out ones (as per Jude 3). If we want to make it into the kingdom of Elohim, we need to continue in that faith to the end as we read in Revelation 14: 12: ***‘Here is the perseverance of the saints who keep the commandments of Elohim and their faith in Yahshua.’*** Yes, Torah cannot be removed from faith as is confirmed in Psalm 119: 29 & 30, ***‘Remove the false way from me, And graciously grant me thy Law (Torah). (30) I have chosen the faithful way; I have placed thine ordinances before me.’***

When Yahshua was on trial before Pilate, He answered in John 18: 37, ***“You say correctly that I am a king. For this I have been born, and for this I have come into the world, to bear***

witness to the truth. Everyone who is of the truth hears My voice. In verse 38 of John 18, Pilate asked: **“What is truth?”** The answer to Pilate’s question may be found in Psalm 119: 142, as follows: **“Thy righteousness is an everlasting righteousness, And Thy Law (Torah) is truth.”** In other words Yahshua came to bear witness to the Torah. Those who hears Torah, hears His voice. Yahshua further more stated in John 8: 31 & 32: **‘Yahshua therefore was saying to those Jews who had believed Him, “If you abide in My word, then you are truly disciples of Mine, (32) and you shall know the truth and the truth shall make you free.”’** Rav Shaul spoke in Romans 1: 25 about those who exchanged the truth for a lie. Yahshua came to bear witness to the truth, as much as Satan and his agents came to speak lies. We read in John 8: 44, Yahshua talking about Satan and his agents as follows: **“You are of your father the devil and you want to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. Whenever he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own nature; for he is a liar, and the father of lies.”** We know that Satan has deceived the whole world (as per Revelation 12: 9).

If Torah is truth, then what is Satan’s lie? His lie is simply that Torah has been done away with. As opposed to the true faith, once delivered to the saints (i.e. Nazarene Judaism – those who keep the Torah of Elohim and their faith in Yahshua), Christianity believe that their savior has done away with his father’s law. The faith of our father’s in the faith Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, was Yahuda-ism (Judaism) – those who praise/worship YAH (see Genesis 29: 35). Father Abraham kept the Torah of YHVH as is recorded in Genesis 26: 5, as follows: **‘because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes and My Laws.’** According to Yahshua’s own words in John 8: 56, Abraham also believed in Him, as follows: **‘Your Father Abraham rejoiced to see My day, and he saw it and was glad.’** Father Abraham did not only keep Torah, but he also believed in Yahshua, the salvation of YHVH, like we do today. According to the Psalms we know that king David also kept

Torah (Psalm 119) and believed in Yahshua (see Psalm 110: 1 – 4).

Now that we know what it is to ***'fall away from the faith'***, let us continue to read about the great falling away, recorded in 2 Timothy 3: 1 – 7, as follows: ***'But realize this, that in the last days difficult times will come. (2) For men will be lovers of self, lovers of money, boastful, arrogant, revilers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, unholy, (3) unloving, irreconcilable, malicious gossips, without self-control, brutal, haters of good, (4) treacherous, reckless, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of Elohim; (5) holding to a form of godliness (faith or religion), although they have denied its power; and avoid such men as these. (6) For among them are those who enter into households and captivate weak woman weighed down with sins, led on by various impulses, (7) always learning and never able to come to the knowledge of truth.'*** Rav Shaul writes to Timothy telling him that the great falling away has to do with Torah observance, by those who are always learning and never come to the knowledge of the truth or Torah. This might well be that they are always looking for answers outside of Torah. I have seen books written about Feast Days that run into hundreds of pages, by people who believe that YHVH took the Oracles away from our Jewish brothers, and given it to them.

We read further in 2 Timothy 4: 3 – 4 , ***'For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but wanting to have their ears tickled, they will accumulate for themselves teachers in accordance to their own desires; (4) and will turn away their ears from the truth, and will turn aside to myths (lies).'*** It is clear from these Scriptures that the great falling away has to do with the rejection of Torah. Rav Kepha also writes about the great falling away that will occur during the last days in 2 Peter 2: 1 & 2, as follows: ***'But false prophets also arose among the people, just as there will also be false teachers among you, who will secretly introduce destructive heresies, even denying (contradicting) the Master who bought them, bringing swift destruction upon themselves.***

(2) And many will follow their sensuality, and because of them the way of truth will be maligned.' Nazarene Judaism is under attack of Lawlessness as well as anti-Semitism. Some are so anti-Semitic that they cannot accept the word of YHVH in Romans 3: 3 and the 1st part of verse 4, stating: **'What then? If some (Jews) did not believe, their unbelief will not nullify the faithfulness of Elohim, will it? (4) May it never be! Rather, let Elohim be found true, though every man be found a liar, as it is written.'**

There have been believers in our Nazarene community who accused those of us, as they put it, of 'sucking up to Jews', by for example, emphasizing the preceding Scripture and wearing head coverings during prayer and worship services. By reading Romans 9: 25 & 26 and understanding the context of Hosea 1: 9 we know that the people who are referred to as **'not My people'** are in fact the sons of Israel. After going into captivity the nation of Israel lost their identity, so much so, that they do not know that they are from the ten tribe nation of Israel, any longer. The remnant spoken about in Romans 11: 5 are those of us 'gentiles', chosen from the lost ten tribes to be grafted back into the olive tree of the House of Judah. Our Jewish brothers are presently blinded to Yahshua's identity (Romans 11: 32), but will in the near future, during a synagogue service on the Feast of Trumpets (Yom Teruah), when Yahshua returns, repent and accept Him as their Master and Savior, as may be read in Zechariah 12: 10.

We are told in Revelation 18: 4 to come out of the Babylon of confusion – where people teach against Torah observance. Teaching folks to get out of only some of their pagan practices, is dishonest. I listened to a CD recording of a Dutch Reformed minister about the many pagan symbols and practices found amongst their congregants. Even though this minister teaches that the Xmas tree, wooden masks and animals made by the indigenous people of Africa, are pagan and should not be in our homes – He stressed at the beginning of the teaching, that the Torah was abolished by Yahshua, and their people need not keep it any longer. In addition he did not say anything about

Xmas being wrong at all. I applaud the fact that Christians are waking up to truth, but must say that they are even now teaching Satan's lies. It is agreed that milk is normally very good for us. But, when arsenic is added to the milk, it becomes lethal. In fact it is just as serious for us, as is a bit of untruth, in a teaching of Torah. Poison in milk may result in (physical) death, but a little bit of untruth could result in our spiritual demise known as the second death.

We need to take our calling very seriously, and make sure we keep on keeping on. We need to heed the warning in Hebrews 6: 4 - 6 ***'For in the case of those who have once been enlightened and have tasted of the heavenly gift and have been made partakers of the Set-apart Spirit, (5) and have tasted the good word of Elohim and the powers of the age to come, (6) and then have fallen away, it is impossible to renew them again to repentance, since they again crucify to themselves the Son of Elohim, and put Him to open shame.'*** Let's get rid of all falsehood, and teach others the Torah truth found in the word of YHVH. Let's focus our efforts on proclaiming the good news of the coming kingdom of Elohim into the entire world. Then our needs will be provided for, and the end shall come. The near future looks bleak, but fortunately we have Yahshua's own promise in the last part of Matthew 24: 22, about the coming tribulation, stating: ***"but for the sake of the elect those days shall be cut short."*** HalleluYah!

Chapter 29: The world to come – what will it be like.

As much as those of us who have been immersed into Messiah Yahshua during this age, have to continue to live a life of overcoming and growth in grace and knowledge, as we are told in 2 Peter 3: 18, so will those who live during the millennium. The only difference will be that they will not have to overcome Satan, as he will be bound for the entire millennium, and will not be able to influence anyone during that time. The people who will live during the millennium will only have to overcome their own evil habits and temptations instinctive within themselves.

Those of us who are called during this age and who have been trained in spiritual knowledge and character will become kings and priests, under Yahshua our Messiah during the millennium. We will train those people who survive the coming great tribulation and Day of Elohim, in the way of Elohim. After the fall of man in the garden of Eden, Elohim shut all humanity off from the 'tree of life', symbolizing Elohim's gift of the Ruach HaKodesh and begetting of Elohim-life, until Yahshua the second Adam shall have replaced Satan to come and rule over all nations on the earth.

According to 1 Peter 4: 17, we read: ***'For it is time for judgment to begin with the household of Elohim, and if it begins with us first, what will be the outcome of those who do not obey the gospel of Elohim?'*** Those that Elohim has called to come to Him through Yahshua the Messiah are being judged, during this lifetime. Judgment of the world will only occur after the millennium. After the millennium rule of Messiah and his first-fruits, YHVH will judge the world in righteousness. The final judgment will be done by Messiah on the judgment seat, as we read in John 5: 22. We read in Revelation 20: 11 & 12 that every human being who ever lived shall be resurrected to give account for their sins committed during their life during this age. By this time the dead in Messiah will have been resurrected to immortal spirit beings, if they have died before His return. Those believers who are still alive at His coming, who are led by Elohim's Set-apart Spirit shall be changed instantly into immortal

spirit beings, as we read in 1 Thessalonians 4: 16 & 17. They shall rule and teach with and under Yahshua during the 1000 years, as we read in the last part of Revelation 20: 4 and in verses 5 & 6.

After the millennium, all the people who were not previously judged, from all the nations, will be resurrected mortal, physical, as they were during their first lives, up to the time of their deaths. They will give account of their lives and will be shown their mistakes. We read Yahshua's own words regarding the Great White Throne Judgment in Matthew 12: 41 & 42, as follows: ***“The men of Nineveh shall stand up with this generation (the people who lived during Messiah’s time) at the judgment, and shall condemn it because they repented at the preaching of Jonah; and behold, something greater than Jonah is here. (42) The Queen of the South shall rise up with this generation at the judgment and shall condemn it, because she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and behold, something greater than Solomon is here.”*** We read more about this in Luke 10: 12 - 15: Yahshua speaking: ***“I say to you, it will be more tolerable in that day for Sodom than for this city. (13) Woe to you Chorazin! Woe to you, Betsaida! For if the miracles had been performed in Tyre and Sidon which occurred in you, they would have repented long ago, sitting in sackcloth and ashes. (14) But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon in the judgment, than for you. (15) And you, Capernaum, will not be exalted to heaven, will you? You will be brought down to Hades!”***

There will be punishments. Those who sinned with full knowledge will be damned to become ashes under the feet of the righteous. Some of the religious leaders who lived during Messiah’s time, knew that He was the Messiah. They were fully aware of the prophecies given about Him in the Tanach and saw the miracles that He performed whilst He was on earth. Similarly, if those of us who have been called during this age, fall away, it is impossible to renew them again to repentance, as we read in Hebrews 6: 4 – 6. Yes, there will be punishment meted out during that time. Also those of us who do what we do with a lack

luster attitude, will be punished as we read in Luke 12: 47 & 48, ***“And that slave who knew his master’s will and did not get ready or act in accord with his will, shall receive many lashes, (48) but the one who did not know it, and committed deeds worthy of a flogging, will receive but a few. And from everyone who has been given much shall much be required; and to whom they entrusted much, of him they will ask all the more.”***

We know from Romans 6: 23 that the penalty for sin is death in the final judgment. Because all have sinned, all shall be judged guilty and sentenced. However, like us, they will learn that Yahshua the Messiah have paid the penalty for their sin. In repentance demonstrated by performance, they will be given an opportunity even at that time to choose life, and be made immortal. Praise Yah - what a merciful creator do we have. We read in Psalm 103: 12 -14, ***‘As far as the east is from the west, So far has He removed our transgressions from us. (13) Just as a father has compassion on his children, So YHVH has compassion on those who fear Him. (14) For He Himself knows our frame; He is mindful that we are but dust.’***

We read in Hebrews 2: 5 ***‘For He did not subject to angels the world to come, concerning which we are speaking.’*** Notice that this is talking about *‘the world to come’*. Scriptures speak of three worlds or civilizations on the earth; the *‘world that was then’* – the world from Adam to Noah or the antediluvian world; this *‘present evil world’* - the world from the flood until Yahshua’s return; and *‘the world to come’* – which will commence when Yahshua comes and sets up the kingdom of Elohim. The verse in Hebrews speaks of angels as if the world had been put in subjection to angels. In the first chapter of Hebrews, we read about Messiah and angels and the relation of angels to us (human beings). This is also explained in Hebrew 2, however, bear in mind that the context is *‘the world to come, concerning which we speak.’* Continuing in Hebrews 2: 6 (quoted directly from Psalm 8), we read: ***‘But one has testified somewhere saying, “What is man, that Thou rememberest him? Or the son of man, that Thou art concerned about him? (7) Thou***

hast made him for a little while lower than the angels; Thou hast crowned him with glory and honor, And hast appointed him over the works of thy hands; (8) Thou hast put all things in subjection under his feet.” David showed in this Psalm that Elohim has placed in subjection of man, the earth, the air and the sea. At this point, however, the writer of Hebrews is inspired to expand David’s prophecy to add something different, something in *‘the world to come.’*

In fact this knowledge of Elohim’s purpose for mankind, our amazing potential is absolutely too much for us to comprehend. Do you know neither science nor any other religion is aware of this. But this is what YHVH our Elohim says that He has prepared for those of us who love Him, according to 1 Corinthians 2: 9 -11: ***‘but just as it is written, “Things which eye has not seen and ear has not heard, And which have not entered the heart of man, All that Elohim has prepared for those who love Him.”*** (10) ***For to us Elohim revealed them through the Spirit; for the Spirit searches all things, even the depths of Elohim.*** (11) ***For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the spirit of the man, which is in him? Even so the thoughts of Elohim no one knows except the Spirit of Elohim.***’ YHVH revealed all the necessary knowledge to Adam and Eve, but they did not obey Him. Then again when Elohim came to dwell with mankind as Yahshua our Messiah, or the second Adam, only a few believed what He said. Even today, many who profess to believe in Him, does not believe in what He taught – this is why so many, even amongst us Nazarene Israelites contradict (or deny) Him.

Continuing on in Hebrews 2 where we left off in verse 8, we read: ***‘For in subjecting all things to him, He left nothing that is not subject to him. But now we do not yet see all things subjected to him.***’ This means, for those willing to believe what Elohim says, He has ruled that everything in the Universe will be placed under man’s subjection. Note that *‘him’* in verse 8 is accordingly, in both instances, in lower case. According to verse 5, this is talking about ***‘the world to come’*** and not our present world. Nevertheless, in verse 9 we read, ***‘But we do see Him*** (in

upper case) ***who has been made for a little while lower than the angels, namely, Yahshua, because of the suffering of death crowned with glory and honor, that by the grace of Elohim He might taste death for everyone.*** Yes, Yahshua is already crowned with esteem (glory) and honor. Continuing in verses 10 & 11 of Hebrews 2, we read: ***'For it was fitting for Him, for whom are all things, and through whom are all things, in bringing many sons (us – the first-fruits) to glory, to perfect the author of their salvation through sufferings. (11) For both He who sanctifies and those who are sanctified are all from one Father; for which reason He is not ashamed to call them brethren.'***

This is saying that those who have been given Elohim's Spirit are joint heirs with Messiah, to inherit all that Messiah has already inherited. We who after immersion have been given a portion of Elohim's Spirit, are only heirs, not yet owners. We know from what is written in Hebrews 1, that Yahshua Messiah already sustains the universe by His limitless power. In Hebrews 1: 5 we see that Yahshua as the Son of Elohim is in a much higher position than the angels. We read in Hebrews 1: 14 that the angels are presently ministering spirits to us, who are of a lower status than they, who are sent to render service for the sake of those who will inherit salvation, when we like Messiah, shall become born sons of Elohim. Putting this together with what we read in Romans 8: 29, as follows: ***'For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the first-born among many brethren.'*** Those of us who have been immersed and have been given a portion of Elohim's Spirit, are heirs of Elohim and joint heirs with Messiah, who is the only one who has already been born as Elohim's Son, by the resurrection from the dead (Romans 1: 4). Yahshua was the trail blazer and we will according to these promises follow Him at the resurrection of the just, at His return to earth in supreme power and esteem.

We read in Romans 8: 11 & 14 - 18, ***'But if the Spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Messiah Yahshua from the dead will also give life to***

your mortal bodies through His Spirit who indwells you. (14) For all who are being led by the Spirit of Elohim, these are Sons of Elohim. (15) For you have not received a spirit of slavery leading to fear again, but you have received a spirit of adoption as sons by which we cry out, "Abba! Father!" (16) The Spirit Himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of Elohim, (17) and if children, heirs also, heirs of Elohim and fellow heirs with Messiah, if indeed we suffer with Him in order that we may also be glorified with Him. (18) For I consider that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory that is to be revealed to us.'

Wow if this does not inspire us to stop sinning, then nothing will. Let's continue on in verses 19 - 23 of Romans 8: ***'For the anxious longing of the creation waits eagerly for the revealing of the sons of Elohim. (20) For the creation was subjected to futility, not of its own will, but because of Him who subjected it, in hope (21) that the creation itself also will be set free from its slavery to corruption into the freedom of the glory of the children of Elohim. (22) For we know that the whole creation groans and suffers the pains of childbirth together until now. (23) And not only this, but also we ourselves, having the first fruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting eagerly for the adoption as sons, the redemption of our body.'***

What a revelation – do you grasp it? We saw in Hebrews 1 that Yahshua our Messiah, the first born from the dead has been glorified and now upholds the universe by the word of His power. He has gone before us and at His return in power and esteem, those who have been immersed into His Name and received a portion of the Set-apart Spirit, shall be born into the Elohim family, by our resurrection. At that time we will become kings and priest under Yahshua Messiah and the entire universe will be put into subjection under us. Now you might ask, why should the whole universe be longing for the appearing of the sons of Elohim? We read in verse 20 of Romans 8, that the universe was subjected to futility. In verse 21 we read that the creation (or

universe) itself will also be set free from its slavery to corruption into freedom of the glory of the children of Elohim. YHVH certainly did not create the universe in futility or decay. The earth was initially created perfect. We know that prior to the creation of mankind, angels inhabited the earth. When these angels rebelled against YHVH our Elohim, they caused the whole earth to turn into a state of decay, the condition we see it in Genesis 1: 2.

However, the entire universe, with all the planets has initially been created to sustain life. Back in Romans 8: 22 we read that the whole creation (universe) groans and suffers the pains of childbirth together until now. Here the creation is pictured like a mother in travail, about to deliver a child. The universe is in this case awaiting the birth of the children of Elohim. This tells us that presently the entire universe; the suns and planets are all in a state of decay and futility, waiting for immersed humans to be born again as children of Elohim. Our ultimate potential is to be born into the Elohim family. We will be given authority over the entire universe under Elohim: We will be responsible to restore the universe, including the planets, to the state in which they were originally created, under His direction.

We see in 1 Corinthians 15: 24 ***“then comes the end, when He delivers up the kingdom to the Elohim and Father, when He has abolished all rule and authority and power.”*** Next we read in Zechariah 14: 9 ***“And YHVH will be king over all the earth; in that day YHVH will be the only one, and His name the only one.”*** Yes we will ultimately be united in the family of Elohim, as we read in Revelation 21: 3 ***‘And I heard a loud voice from the throne, saying, “Behold the tabernacle of Elohim is among men, and He shall dwell among them, and they shall be His people, and Elohim Himself shall be among them.”’*** We read in Isaiah 9: 7 that there will be no end of Elohim’s government or of peace. After the day of judgment the Universe will be renovated by fire. The elements will be destroyed with intense heat as we read in 2 Peter 3: 10. Next, we are told by John in Revelation 21 that He saw a new heaven and a new earth; for the first heaven and the first earth will have past away. This will be the last and permanent world, wherein

dwells the righteous. This will be the conclusion of Elohim's master plan, when the universe will finally be recreated, with eternity ahead of us!

Chapter 30: When does a day begin?

There is a great deal of confusion in our Nazarene community today: People are wearied by many counsels and stumble around because of a lack of knowledge. This is confirmed for us in Hosea 4: 5 & 6, where we read: ***'So you will stumble by day, And the prophet also will stumble with you by night; And I will destroy your mother*** (probably mentioned, because mothers are the teachers of Torah to young children). (6) ***My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I also will reject you from being My priest. Since you have forgotten the law of your Elohim, I also will forget your children.'*** The overriding problem is that there are not many teachers available to teach our people truth and the basic tenets of our faith. Besides, those coming from other pagan religions are most distrustful of ministers of religion and people teaching them about the Scriptures. They say that there is so much confusion around that they do not want to be taught religious matters by anyone any longer; and that they will rather do their own study and research to get to know YHVH and His Torah.

However, Yahshua employed a method of teaching/studying, which He commissioned His disciples to follow. If we are truly His disciples, we will follow Him in that way. We see in the first four books of the Renewed Covenant, that Yahshua taught in the Temple courts and synagogues during the weekly and annual Sabbaths. Like John the Immerser³⁷, Yahshua was a first century Rabbi and used the Rabbi-disciple method of teaching Torah and the knowledge of Elohim to His disciples. This method of teaching was originally instituted by Moses, when he taught Joshua. The teachers of each generation were delegated to raise-up disciples and future teachers for the next generation. The purpose of a first century Rabbi like Yahshua, dedicated to teaching the Torah or teachings of Elohim, was to explain the Torah in practical terms and to convey the knowledge of Elohim

³⁷ Yes John the Immerser was a Rabbi, and called so by his disciples, as may be read in John 3: 26.

to future generations. Like other Rabbis, Yahshua raised-up disciples who would later become teachers, to immerse and teach new believers or disciples to observe all that their Master taught and commanded them. Yahshua raised-up many disciples during His ministry of three and a half years. He raised-up the original twelve disciples and many others who were immersed by the apostles after His resurrection and ascension to heaven. This is also the commission that Yahshua gave His disciples and by implication also us, His modern day disciples, after His resurrection in Matthew 28: 18 – 20: ***‘And Yahshua came up and spoke to them, saying, “All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, immersing them in the name (singular) of the Father and the Son and the Set-apart Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”’*** Because we are the modern day students or disciples of Yahshua, we should continue to follow our Master Yahshua, in the same methodology.

This methodology of teaching/studying Torah ensures that there will always be people who will teach new generations, and that the knowledge of Elohim and His Torah would not be lost. Without teachers we will continue to stumble as we read in Romans 10: 13 & 14: ***‘for “WHOEVER WILL CALL UPON THE NAME OF YHVH WILL BE SAVED.” (14) How then shall they call upon Him in whom they have not believed? And how shall they believe in Him whom they have not heard? And how shall they hear without a preacher?*** Following Yahshua and His discipleship program, we will know and trust our teachers, as they will have been trained by others in the faith before them. As a result, we will not easily be led astray by people who did not go through the same training themselves. Self study is essential, but it is certain that even if you read the Scriptures through many times, without guidance you will not understand much, on your own. This is described in Isaiah 28: 9 – 13: ***“To whom would He teach knowledge? And to whom would He interpret the message? Those just weaned from milk? Those just taken from the breast? (10) “For He says, ‘Order on order, order***

on order, Line on line, line on line, A little here, a little there.'
 (11) ***Indeed, He will speak to this people Through stammering lips and a foreign tongue,*** (12) ***He who said to them, "Here is rest, give rest to the weary," And, "Here is repose," but they would not listen.*** (13) ***So the word of YHVH to them will be, "Order on order, order on order, Line on line, line on line, A little here, a little there," That they may go and stumble backward, be broken, snared, and taken captive.***" Without teachers we will go back into captivity where we came from. After our immersion into Yahshua's saving Name, we need to grow in grace and knowledge (as we read in 2 Peter 3: 18), else we will be backsliding. As prophesied in Jeremiah 16: 19, we need to repent from being hoodwinked, into believing the falsehood that we were taught in the past, as follows: ***'O YHVH, my strength and my stronghold, And my refuge in the day of distress, To Thee the nations will come From the ends of the earth and say, "Our fathers have inherited nothing but falsehood, Futility and things of no profit."***" Yes, knowing the truth is profitable for us; It is for our own good and will set us free. The point is YHVH has an educational system and He calls people who obey Him. YHVH does not reveal His teachings to those who refuse to cooperate with Him. In addition He does not exalt a novice who may use His education unwisely. However, there are those who set themselves up outside of the education system of Elohim, being deceived themselves, and deceiving new comers in our faith, to be enslaved into falsehood once again.

Having said that, let us consider the topic at hand: When does a day begin? Or more specifically, when does the Sabbath begin? I will give a very simple answer to the question to start with, and will then explain the same in more detail. For me it is very simple, since the word of Elohim says many times that the Jews have the Oracles of Elohim³⁸, I will go no further than to ask a

³⁸ *The Jews have the oracles of Elohim: Romans 3: 1 - 4; Romans 9: 1 - 5; Psalm 147: 19 & 20; Nahum 1: 15; Malachi 2: 1 - 8; Jeremiah 23: 32 - 36 & 39; Ezekiel 13: 2 - 4 & 9; Psalm 60: 7; Genesis 49: 10; and Zechariah 8: 23; We should also believe in the writings of Moses: See Exodus 19: 9; John 5: 45 - 47; Leviticus 23: 2 - 4; YHVH said to Moses:*

Jewish Rabbi for the answer. I have in fact done just that, by asking the question in a search engine and looked for an answer by a Rabbi. The Rabbi's reply was: The Sabbath starts at sunset on Friday evening and ends the next evening, when three stars are visible with the naked eye. There are many who contradict the word of Elohim (Yahshua), saying that the oracles were removed from the Jews, because of their unbelief. We know from Romans 3: 3 & 4 that this is in fact, a lie. **(For additional information on this subject³⁹, be sure to request my paper entitled: 'Who has the oracles of YHVH our Elohim?')** There are also those who because of misunderstanding or deception, believe that the Sabbath starts during the day-light part of Saturday. The idea comes from the fact that they do not understand the very first book of the Scriptures.

This teaching is therefore not in condemnation of fellow believers, but to help us all appreciate why they are missing the point. Very few people realize that right from the start or at the very beginning our Father YHVH planned to bring forth beings that would eventually become his helpers. These helpers would be like Him in every respect. They would over time have His character reproduced in them by His Set-apart Spirit. We know that Elohim's character is love and righteousness. YHVH commenced His plan to reproduce Himself by creating powerful spiritual beings called angels. The angels were created to be ministers, agents or helpers in Elohim's creation. In human thinking they would be like Elohim's 'children' who would assist Him in administering His kingdom in the Universe. In fact Angels are, because they were created by Elohim, called sons of Elohim in Job 1: 6, however, they were not begotten and born sons of Elohim. These angels were free moral agents, with the ability to

'(YHVH)'s appointed times which you shall proclaim as Set-apart convocations – My appointed times are these'; Mathew 23: 1 & 2 (Moses or whoever sits in his seat).

³⁹ *You may also request my book entitled: 'What is our destiny?' In addition please read the six books under the title: 'A PARADISICAL UNIVERSE OF MAN' by R.I. Katter on the web page www.nephos.com. It might not be 100% in agreement with everything we believe, but I found it edifying and uplifting to read.*

choose to go (YHVH)'s way – the way of giving and sharing, or the wrong way - which is in essence the way of get. The reason why YHVH created them as free moral agents is that He wanted them over time to become like Him, without forcing them in any way. In addition, YHVH did not want robots in His Kingdom. For millions of years these angels followed the way of YHVH, until one day, a third of the angels followed the archangel Lucifer in rebellion against YHVH to take over His throne in the third heaven. They fought against the other two thirds of the angels, still loyal to YHVH. However, they were overcome and thrown down to earth, where they are now living as fallen angels or demons. These angels, who are spiritual beings, could not change once they have decided to follow a life of wrongdoing. We read about Satan's rebellion in Isaiah 14; Ezekiel 28; and Jude 6 & 7; and how he and his angels were thrown down to earth in Revelation 12: 3 & 4 and Luke 10: 18.

We see in Job 38 in verse 7, after the initial creation, the angels (morning stars) sang together and shouted for joy. However their joy was followed by disappointment. In verse 8 we read about the control of violent waters; verse 9 talks about a dense cloud covering and darkness; and verse 13 talks about a shaking of the earth to deal with the wicked. In Psalm 18: 7 we read that the earth shook and quaked and went out of course and in Jeremiah 4: 23 we see that the earth became formless and void and the heavens had no light. In 2 Peter 3: 5 & 6 Rav Kepha (Peter) wrote: ***'For when they maintain this, it escapes their notice that by the word of Elohim the heavens existed long ago and the earth was formed out of water and by water, (6) through which the world at that time was destroyed, being flooded with water.'*** This all happened when Lucifer tried to elevate himself on a position equal to YHVH and to take over the government of the Universe. YHVH had to bring judgment upon Lucifer and as a result the contaminated earth perished. The earth's axial position in reference to its journey around the sun shifted by more than 23 degrees and caused a pendulum effect to the waters of the earth, moving to and fro, until it eventually came to rest. Evidence of animal hordes and plant fragments destroyed by the swirling waters, inundated the continents with

animal fossils and destroyed plant life bearing witness to this earth shaking catastrophe. The world in Noah's day did not perish and his ark drifted only a few hundred miles without sails. But the catastrophe caused by Lucifer's rebellion carried masses of ice and rock for thousands of miles. The earth underwent a catastrophe, known by geologist as the 'Ice Age'. All life forms perished and the earth became formless and void.

The result of war between the angels and demons left the world formless and void. This is the condition we see the earth in when we open our Scriptures at Genesis 1: 2. At that point in time YHVH decides to recreate the heavens and the earth. YHVH also at this point chose not to create his future children as spiritual beings. He decided to initially create human kind from physical matter, in His image with the mind power to think and plan and 'create'. They too would have free moral agency to decide between good and evil. They had to prove through their lives that they would follow Elohim's way of life and develop His perfect character. The original universe created in Genesis 1: 1 was perfect. When YHVH created the universe through his word, He did not create darkness. However, even in Lucifer's rebellion when he caused the earth to be totally destroyed, the all knowing Elohim used the darkness that resulted to provide night for physical man to rest in. In addition YHVH used the destruction that Satan caused to place fossilized fuels, such as oil and coal, at our disposal for use in the advanced technology that He inspired us to develop during the past hundred years, before Yahshua's return to come and rule us, for a thousand years.

As I mentioned before, without understanding these facts some say that a day commence with the day part first. They hold that YHVH would not start His creation by darkness. The answer is that He did not. After Satan destroyed the earth, YHVH recreated it as we read in Genesis 1 from verse 3 on. He starts by saying: ***“Let there be light”; and there was light.*** In verses 4 & 5 we read: ***‘And Elohim saw that the light was good; and Elohim separated the light from darkness. (5) And Elohim called the light day, and the darkness He called night, And there was evening and there was morning, one day.’*** Here we have the

very first day that YHVH our Elohim recreated specifically for mankind. Notice it starts in the evening followed by morning. This also pictures how we currently in darkness, will move into light, when Yahshua the Messiah returns to rule us for a thousand years, and onto eternity. We know from Genesis 2: 3 that YHVH blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because in it He rested from all His work which He created and made. Like the previous six days, the seventh day also consists of an evening part and a morning part. So does every day during our current dispensation, commence with evening followed by morning as we see in Leviticus 23: 27 & 32, talking about the Day of Atonement, as follows: ***“On exactly the tenth day of this seventh month (known as Tishrei) is the day of atonement; it shall be a Set-apart convocation for you, and you shall humble your souls and present an offering by fire to YHVH. (32) It is to be a Sabbath of complete rest to you, and you shall humble your souls; on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening until evening you shall keep your Sabbath.”*** Here we see clearly that the tenth day also starts with an evening part and it lasts for 24 hours, until the next day starts, the next evening.

A second witness to when the Sabbath starts, is found in Nehemiah 13: 19, as follows: ***‘And it came about that just as it grew dark at the gates of Jerusalem before the Sabbath, I commanded that the doors should be shut and that they should not open them until after the Sabbath. Then I stationed some of my servants at the gates that no load should enter on the Sabbath day.’*** Additionally we read in Jeremiah 33: 20 – 26, the word of YHVH saying to Jeremiah: ***“Thus says YHVH, ‘if you can break My covenant for the day, and My covenant for the night, so that day and night will not be at their appointed time, (21) then My covenant may also be broken with David My servant that he shall not have a son to reign on his throne, and with the Levitical priests, My ministers.’ (22) ‘As the host of heaven cannot be counted, and the sand of the sea cannot be measured, so I will multiply the descendants of David My servant and the Levites who minister to Me.” (23) And the word of YHVH came to Jeremiah saying, (24) “Have you not observed what***

this people have spoken, saying, 'The two families which YHVH chose, He has rejected them?' Thus they despise My people, no longer are they as a nation in their sight. (25) Thus says YHVH 'If My covenant for day and night stand not, and the fixed patterns of heaven and earth I have not established, (26)then I would reject the descendants of Jacob and David My servant, not taking from his descendants rulers over the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. But I will restore their fortunes and will have mercy on them.'" There you have it; the patterns that YHVH created in the beginning did not change.

Yes, I already hear some responding to the last quoted Scripture, saying: 'We see that day is mentioned before night in this quoted Scripture, showing that, we (those responding thus) are correct in assuming that a day commences with a daylight part followed, by night.' If that is your responds, then you are simply wrangling about words and should heed the warning given in 1 Timothy 6: 3 – 5, as follows: ***'If anyone advocates a different doctrine, and does not agree with sound words, those of our Master Yahshua Messiah, and with the doctrine conforming to godliness, (4) he is conceited and understands nothing; but he has a morbid interest in controversial questions and disputes about words, out of which arise envy, strife, abusive language, evil suspicions, (5) and constant friction between men of depraved mind and deprived of the truth, who suppose that religion is a means of gain.'*** This idea is taken further in 2 Timothy 2: 14 – 16, where we read: ***'Remind them of these things, and solemnly charge them in the presence of Elohim not to wrangle about words, which is useless, and leads to ruin of the hearers. (15) Be diligent to present yourself approved to Elohim as a workman who does not need to be ashamed, handling accurately the word of truth. (16) But avoid worldly and empty chatter, for it will lead to further ungodliness.'*** We need to be very careful what we teach. Yahshua, who is YHVH in the flesh, only taught what YHVH wanted Him to teach. We should never teach what is not scripturally true; We should never add or take away the words of prophesy of the word of YHVH, since whatever is added, will be

added to the plagues (of those guilty of such an offense) which are written in the Scriptures. And whatever is taken away, will be taken away from their part from the tree of life and from the Set-apart city, which are written in this book.

In addition we have to be careful that we do not cause the new people in our community (the little ones – those who only started out and know very little to start with), to stumble by what we teach. We read Yahshua's own words in Matthew 18: 6 & 7, as follows: ***“but whoever causes one of these little ones who believe in Me to stumble, it is better for him that a heavy millstone be hung around his neck, and that he be drowned in the depth of the sea. (7) Woe to the world because of its stumbling blocks! For it is inevitable that stumbling blocks come; but woe to that man through whom the stumbling block comes!”*** Why do we as a community have so many factions? The answer is given in 1 Corinthians 11: 19, as follows: ***‘For there must also be factions among you, in order that those who are approved may become evident among you.’*** We should study and teach doctrines, as taught by our fathers in the faith. Our doctrines should be in accordance with what our Master Yahshua taught and with the Scriptures, so that we may not be easily deceived, as we read in Ephesians 4: 14 - 18 ***‘As a result, we are no longer to be children, tossed here and there by waves, and carried about by every wind of doctrine, by the trickery of men, by craftiness in deceitful scheming; (15) but speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in all aspects into Him, who is the head, even Messiah, (16) from whom the whole body, being fitted and held together by that which every joint supplies, according to the proper working of each individual part, causes the growth of the body for the building up of itself in love. (17) This I say therefore, and affirm together with YHVH, that you walk no longer just as Gentiles also walk, in the futility of their mind, (18) being darkened in their understanding, excluded from the life of Elohim, because of the ignorance that is in them, because of the hardness of their heart.’***

We should also avoid people who make us stumble, as we are warned figuratively speaking, in Matthew 18: 8 & 9: ***“And if your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it from you; it is better for you to enter life crippled or lame, than having two hands or two feet, to be cast into the eternal fire. (9) And if your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out, and throw it from you. It is better for you to enter life with one eye, than have two eyes, to be cast into the fiery hell.”*** Selah!

Chapter 31: Who do you worship?

Most people believe that worship involves a public service, during which hymns are sung, prayers are said and a sermon is given in worship to the Supreme Being, they refer to as G-d⁴⁰. A dictionary definition of the word worship is: *'the performance of devotional acts in honor of the Supreme Being'*; or *'submissive respect or admiring devotion of the Supreme Being'*. The word worship comes from an old English word meaning 'worth-ship', meaning respect, reverence and worthiness directed towards Elohim. This means that when we worship Elohim, we show our appreciation of His worth. Yes, such outward religious practices as the singing of hymns, prayer services and Scriptural reading do symbolize worshipping of Elohim. However, how does YHVH tell us to worship Him in The Scriptures?

We read Yahshua's own words to the woman at the well in this regard, saying in John 4: 21 – 24, ***"Woman, believe Me, an hour is coming when neither in this mountain, nor in Jerusalem, shall you worship the Father. (22) You worship that which you do not know; we worship that which we know, for salvation is from the Jews⁴¹. (23) But an hour is coming, and now is, when true worshipers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth; for such people the Father seeks to be His worshipers. (24) Elohim is Spirit, and those***

⁴⁰ Our brother in Messiah, Johann Van Rooyen recently sent me an article containing the following information regarding the term 'G-d': *The Encyclopedia Britannica (11th edition) clearly testifies to the pagan origin of the term "god": GOD—the common Teutonic word for a personal object of religious worship...applied to all those superhuman beings of the heathen (pagan) mythologies. The word "god" on the conversion of the Teutonic races to Christianity was adopted as the name of the Supreme Being.*

Knowing this and in obedience to Exodus 23: 13, we do not mention the name of other elohim, nor let them be heard from your mouths. Hence, we do not write out the pagan title as used in pagan mythology.

⁴¹ *This means: (a) That Yahshua our Messiah was born a Jew and that He is our salvation; and (b) the Rabbinical Jews of today are still Elohim's Law giver, and if we obey those laws exactly according to The Scriptures, we will reap the blessings of the Law. However, working out our own Feast Days and Sabbaths is not honoring the name of YHVH and will reap the curse spoken about in Malachi 2: 1-8.*

who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth.” What does it mean to Worship YHVH in spirit and in truth? To begin with, it means that we do not worship our Father for show, that is, to be seen by people. In Matthew chapter 6, Yahshua gave His disciples a pattern for their prayers, and saying in verses 5 & 6: ***‘And when you pray, you are not to be as hypocrites; for they love to stand and pray in the synagogues and on street corners, in order to be seen by men. Truly I say to you, they have their reward in full. (6) But you, when you pray, go into your inner room, and when you have shut your door, pray to your Father who is in secret, and your Father who sees in secret will repay you.’*** Yahshua said that we should not pray just to be heard by others, so that they are impressed by our ‘righteousness.’ Rather, we should pray because we really want to talk to YHVH, and that is actually done in private.

Now let us consider what truth is: We read Yahshua’s explanation of what truth is in John 17: 17, as follows: ***“Sanctify them in the truth; Thy word is truth.”*** Yahshua is the Word of Elohim made flesh (as per John 1: 1 – 3, & 14) or put differently, He is the embodiment of Torah. The word of Elohim is truth. Do we truly believe that? Or are there sections in the Word of Elohim, which we consider to be false? When Yahshua was tempted in the wilderness by Satan, He sharply rebuked him, according to Matthew 4: 10, saying: ***“Begone, Satan! For it is written, ‘YOU SHALL WORSHIP YHVH YOUR ELOHIM, AND SERVE HIM ONLY.’”*** Rav Shaul equated his worship of Elohim in Acts 24: 14, as follows: ***“But this I admit to you, that according to the Way which they call a sect (‘the sect of the Nazarenes’- see Acts 24: 5) I do serve the Elohim of our fathers, believing everything that is in accordance with the Law (Torah), and that is written in the Prophets.”*** We know that at that time he was actually referring to the Tanach. But we also know that the word of Elohim is the Scriptures from Genesis to Revelation.

YHVH wants us to worship Him in truth. We do this by honoring Him, serving Him and obeying His instructions given in His word, The Scriptures. In Matthew 4: 4 we read: ***“It is written, ‘MAN***

SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUTH OF ELOHIM.” The way we worship YHVH our Elohim, should be reflected in the way we live our daily lives. Our relationship with YHVH is a way of life. We read an example of how we should live in Acts 18: 25 & 26, as follows: ***‘This man had been instructed in the way of YHVH; and being fervent in spirit, he was speaking and teaching accurately the things concerning Yahshua, being acquainted only with the immersion of John (the Immerser); (26) and he began to speak out boldly in the synagogue. But when Priscilla and Aquila heard him, they took him aside and explained to him the way of Elohim more accurately.’*** Worshipping YHVH is a way of thinking, acting and living. It affects every aspect of our lives.

True worship of YHVH involves the inward transformation of the human heart, by faith in Yahshua Messiah and in His sacrifice. External worship practices alone, is not enough. YHVH is looking for those who will worship Him in spirit, from a converted heart. True worship is much more than praising YHVH in a public worship service. Putting it in the broader sense of the word, it is acknowledging Elohim’s nature, His attributes, His ways, and claims, in praise and thanksgiving. Yahshua our Messiah rebuked the religious leaders of His day because they distorted Elohim’s commandments and substituted the same with their own humanly concocted teachings. We read Yahshua’s own words in this regard in Matthew 15: 7 – 9, saying: ***“You hypocrites, rightly did Isaiah prophesy of you, saying, (8) ‘THIS PEOPLE HONORS ME WITH THEIR LIPS, BUT THEIR HEART IS FAR AWAY FROM ME. (9) BUT IN VAIN DO THEY WORSHIP ME, TEACHING AS DOCTRINES THE PRECEPTS OF MEN.’”*** A second witness to this may be found in Mark 7: 7. Yahshua warned that if we follow the commandments of men in the way they worship YHVH, we are mistaken. This could be following pagan practices such as Sunday worship, Xmas and Easter celebrations. But it also applies to those who interpret the Scriptures, using external sources to determine the timing of the (weekly and) annual Sabbaths; thereby contradicting what is

taught in the word of Elohim⁴². Yahshua plainly stated that such worship is in vain. He reserved the harshest words of warning for those who profess to worship Elohim, but refuse to obey His word, as recorded in Matthew 7: 21: ***“Not everyone who says to Me, ‘Master, Master,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven; but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven.”*** Such worship is vain and without substance, unacceptable to Elohim.

Let’s divert briefly to determine which calendar Yahshua followed. The year of Yahshua’s impalement and therefore also the Passover, can be confirmed by correlating the prophecy of Daniel 9 with the occurrence described in Ezra 7. Daniel explained that there would be a time period of 70 ‘weeks’ that is to say 490 prophetic days. We are also told that 69 of these ‘weeks’, i.e. 483 years would run from the time of the decree to rebuilt Jerusalem until the Messiah’s appearance. This decree of King Artaxerxes that commences the count of the prophetic ‘weeks’ is recorded in Ezra 7. Ezra arrived in Jerusalem with the decree in the summer of 457 BCE. Adding 483 years to 457 BCE, brings us to 27 CE. This is the year during which Yahshua was immersed. Yahshua’s ministry began at the time when John the Immerser’s came to an end. Yahshua was about 30 years of age when He was immersed. Most researchers agree that His ministry lasted for 3 ½ years. He started His ministry in the fall of 27 CE and was impaled in the spring of 31 CE. We know that Yahshua was impaled on the 4th day of the week and resurrected three days and three nights later, at the end of the weekly Sabbath. This means that the Passover of 31 CE, the scripturally established time of His impalement, had to occur on the fourth day of the week.

Both the British and U.S. Naval Observatories corroborate that that particular Passover occurred on the fourth day of the week

⁴² *It is interesting to note that many of those who claim to reject the Hebrew calendar because they consider it a tradition of the Pharisees, have used the Talmud as their source of calendar information and definitions, rather than the Scriptures itself. We should Let the Scriptures interpret the Scriptures.*

(or Wednesday) that year. This agrees with prophecy in Daniel 9: 27; Yahshua was to be cut off in the middle of the week. He was in the grave for three full days and three full nights according to His claim in Matthew 12: 40 and the record of His resurrection in Matthew 28: 1 – 6. Titus a Roman general besieged Jerusalem on September 7th 70 CE. Against his orders, his soldiers burned the Temple, resulting in a giant problem. All the gold in the Temple melted down into the huge stones. It took seven months to remove all the gold from the destroyed Temple building, bringing us to the spring of 71 CE. There is an arch-monument commemorating the overthrow of Jerusalem in the south of Rome. Titus returned to Rome in the spring of 71 CE. Yahshua predicted the destruction of the Temple in Matthew 24: 1 & 2. He added in Matthew 24: 34, saying: ***“Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place.”*** In Scriptural times a generation was said to be 40 years (see Psalm 95: 10, Heb. 3: 9 - 10, and Numbers 32: 13). True to Yahshua’s word, we see that from the spring of 31 CE to spring of 71 CE is exactly 40 years. Yahshua kept the Feast Days on the same days that the Jews of His day kept it, except for the Passover, which He kept on the night of the fourteenth of Aviv (in keeping with Exodus 12: 6). The Jews of His day, like today, keep the Passover, on the evening of the Fifteenth of Aviv, when the First Day of Unleavened Bread commences. We, in following our Master Yahshua observe the Hebrew Calendar, but keep the Passover in the evening of the 14th Aviv. By reading the four gospels, you will notice that Yahshua kept all the other Feast Days including Chanukah (see John 10: 22), according to the Hebrew calendar.

There are those who say that when Hillel II issued a decree in the year 358 – 359 CE to institute a fixed calendar, known today as the Hebrew calendar, he corrupted the Scriptural calendar. For this reason these people reject the Hebrew calendar. However, at that time Hillel II was a member of the Sanhedrin and it was according to Scriptures⁴³ his right to determine the

⁴³ Romans 3: 1 - 4; Romans 9: 1 - 5; Psalm 147: 19 & 20; Nahum 1: 15; Malachi 2: 1 – 8; Jeremiah 23: 32 – 36 & 39; Ezekiel 13: 2 - 4 & 9; Isaiah 47: 13; Zechariah 8: 23;

timing of the Feast Days of Elohim. Whether we like it or not, the Hebrew calendar is for that reason the only legitimate Scriptural calendar, today. The ruling of Hillel II will remain in force until such time as a new Sanhedrin is reestablished in Jerusalem. We know that, that will only happen when Messiah comes to rule the world from Jerusalem. YHVH gave Moses the know how to intercalate the Hebrew calendar. At this point I would like to quote from a paper by James Trimm, entitled: 'THE SECRET OF THE INTERCALATION OF THE HEBREW CALENDAR', as follows:

'Now part of the Oral Law that was given to the Jews was the secret of the intercalation of (YHVH)'s calendar. Talking to Ezekiel about the prophets of Israel⁴⁴, YHVH declares: "They shall not be in the council (sod/secret) of my people," (Ezek. 13: 9) which refers to the council (secret) for intercalation. (b.Kettubot 112a)

YHVH said to Moshe and Aaron... "This month shall mark for you the beginning of the months..." (Ex. 12: 1-2) At the moment when Moshe received this commandment, the Holy One blessed be He, transmitted to him the precise rules of calculating the new moon. He made known to him the way to intercalate the year and establish the months, in order to fulfill the verse "Observe the spring month and offer a Passover sacrifice..." (Deut. 16: 1) (Midrash Sod Ha'Ibbur)

For example, although the new moon must be sited, YHVH gave Moshe on Mount Sinai the length of time between one new moon and the next as part of the Oral Torah. Maimonides records this information as follows:

The day and night consist of 24 hours, 12 for the day and 12 for the night, in any season. The hour is divided into 1, 080 parts. The reason for dividing the hour into this number of parts is that this number may be divided without a remainder by two, four, eight, three, six, nine, five and ten, and with these denominations the fractions may again be

John 5: 45 - 47; Mathew 23: 1 & 2 (Moses or whoever sits in his seat); Leviticus 23: 2 - 4; YHVH said to Moses: '(YHVH)'s appointed times which you shall proclaim'.

⁴⁴ From verse 1 of Ezekiel 13.

divided into many other parts. By these figures, the interval between two conjunctions of moon and sun according to their mean motion is 29 days and 12 hours of the 30th day, beginning with the night of this day, and 793 parts of the 13th hour. That is the time which elapse between one (mean) conjunction and the other, and that is the duration of the lunar month. (Maimonides Laws of Sanctifying the Moon 6: 2-3)

$793/1080 = .734259 \text{ hours} = .03059 \text{ days}$

Therefore Maimonides says that a lunar month as preserved in the Oral Torah from Sinai and preserved by the Jews is:

$29 \text{ days} + 12 \text{ hours } (.5 \text{ days}) + .03059 \text{ days} = 29.53059 \text{ days}$

This is EXACTLY the figure understood by modern astronomers in the FACTS ON FILE DICTIONARY OF ASTRONOMY by Ellingsworth; New York; 1985 p. 241”

The figure used anciently to calculate the Hebrew calendar of 29.53059 days per month, was the same one used by NASA until 1968, when satellite and computer technology allowed them to take the number out one more decimal point. How was it possible for Moses an ancient Israelite to arrive at a more accurate figure than his contemporaries? We read in Exodus 31: 1 – 11 how the Set-apart Spirit of YHVH empowered two men to have special skills and knowledge to make the items required for the tabernacle. Did the Set-apart Sprit not also empower Moses to have the ability for making the astronomical calculations required to compute the calendar? As we have seen, these calculations remained unsurpassed until 1968, when the USA put a man on the moon. Is there Scriptural support where the eclipses are used to calculate the length of time from one new moon to the next? In Genesis 1: 14 we see that both the sun and the moon are for signs and seasons. The Hebrew word for sign is ‘ot’. The word ‘ot’ is often used to refer to remarkable and dramatic signs. It is used in Exodus 4: 8 – 9, to explain the remarkable wonders that YHVH performed in ancient Egypt. Even today, there are not many signs that are more dramatic than solar and lunar eclipses. I remember a few years ago how

a few people at the University where I worked, bought special glasses to view a solar eclipse. These signs provide the basis of a calculated Hebrew calendar in use today.

According to the New American Standard Bible, the sun and the moon were for '*seasons, and for days and years*'. In the Jewish Publication Society (JPS) version of the Tanach, the word '*seasons*' is referred to as '*appointed times*' – which comes from the Hebrew word '*mo'ed*'. This same word is used in Psalm 104: 19, where we see that YHVH appointed the moon for seasons ('*mo'ed*'). The phase of the moon determines the progression of the month. The Feast Days of YHVH are either linked to the new moon at the beginning of the month or at the full moon in the middle of the month. The correct way of intercalating the year according to the Hebrew method in the Scriptures, is by placing Passover on or after the Spring Equinox⁴⁵. This is established by the literal meaning of Exodus 34: 22 which demands that the intercalation of the Set-apart Days, rather than the whole year be regulated by the equinoxes ('*tekufah*' in Hebrew). In regard to barley, it is important to understand that the command to offer first-fruits on the day after the first annual Sabbath or day of rest, the First Day of Unleavened Bread (or the high day Sabbath, which occurred on the day after Yahshua's impalement and burial in John 19: 31). Many believers have been misled to believe that this offering was of 'ripe grain' rather than of 'green ears'. It is for this reason that some who determine their own calendar, sometimes keep the Feast of Tabernacles a month late, with the Last Great Day falling as late as the 4th of November. This faulty intercalation system is nothing other than the practice that Jeroboam instituted to cause Israel to keep the Feast of Tabernacles in the eighth month and be taken into captivity because of this apostasy.

⁴⁵ *The Feast Days of YHVH are always considered with the land of Israel in mind and are observed as seen by people living in the northern hemisphere.*

With the last example fresh in our minds, let us return to the topic, namely: What is true worship? There are many people in the world who are totally disillusioned with traditional worship services. They start leaving the traditional churches to find more charismatic groups. But even after having been in such groups for a while, they again feel uneasy and start searching more. Some eventually start looking for their so-called Hebrew roots. However, many are soon disillusioned when they discover some more confusion. This is very disconcerting and we need to assist these searchers of truth, by making sure that we teach them Elohim's truth which can only be found in the Scriptures. Yes, the Talmud denies Yahshua, as one believer who is trying to sell the idea that the 'Sabbath starts on Saturday morning at sunset', reminded me during last week. However, we should not forget that Yahshua himself said in Matthew 15: 24, "***I was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.***" This means that He came specifically for us the lost ten tribes of Israel, and not for our Jewish brothers. In addition we read in Romans 11 that YHVH himself blinded them, until the fullness of the Gentiles (those lost Israelites who presently still think that they are gentiles) have come in, then all Israel will be saved. Do we doubt Him? We see how our Jewish brothers, who will be sitting in their synagogues on Rosh Hashanah (Yom Teruah) when Yahshua returns, will see Him whom we have pierced and will repent (including accepting Yahshua as their Savior) (see Zechariah 12: 10). This is when all Israel will be saved.

Is it important for us, at this time, to know how the Jews intercalate the Hebrew calendar? Is it important that we study the Talmud? I do not think so. Scriptures tell us that the Jews have the oracles, and for me that is enough. They are Elohim's lawgiver, meaning they have the truth or words of Elohim, regarding the Sabbaths, Kosher Laws and the Hebrew language, even if some of them did not believe. I only need to follow the Scriptures and do not have to be overly concerned with the interpretation of external sources, as to how Elohim should be worshipped. We read in Jeremiah 10 which is specifically addressing us the lost ten tribes of Israel, saying in verses 1 & 2: ***'Hear the word which YHVH speaks to you, O house of***

Israel. (2) ***Thus says YHVH, “Do not learn the way of the nations, And do not be terrified by the signs of the heavens Although the nations are terrified by them.”***” We need only follow the word of Elohim and forget the things that scare the gentiles. The sun and moon was given to us for signs and seasons; we use the moon as well as the green ears of barley in Israel to confirm the calendar as calculated by our Jewish brothers, and not to determine our own calendar. They are according to the Scriptures responsible to determine the calendar and if it is not totally correct at this time, it is sure to be corrected by Yahshua at His return.

When we come to understand the significance of true worship, it becomes supremely relevant to our lives and to our ultimate destiny. Elohim’s annual and weekly Sabbaths were never abolished or changed for anybody. It remains in force and is relevant to the lives of all human beings. True worship of Elohim honors His command concerning His Sabbaths. Sunday worship does not have Elohim’s authority, neither has a Sabbath or annual Feast Day which starts at a different time to which He ordained. These have the authority of man and not that of Elohim. The question that must be answered, is whether Elohim accepts such worship when His clear commands regarding the timing of His Sabbaths are ignored?

Satan is the master counterfeiter; he changed every command that YHVH gave us, by teaching just the opposite through his agents in the world. These agents are not only the churches of the world, but also those amongst us who are contradicting everything we read in the word of Elohim. We read in Isaiah 24: 4 & 5 ***‘The earth mourns and withers, the world fades and withers, the exalted of the people of the earth fade away. (5) The earth is also polluted by its inhabitants, for they transgressed laws, violated statutes, and broke the everlasting covenant.’*** By changing the Sabbath to Friday or Sunday is breaking the everlasting covenant. But so is starting the Sabbath at 12 pm or at sunrise in the morning.

May I at this point ask: Do you believe your teacher, or the word of Elohim? Who do you worship? Speaking for my household, I vouch that as far as humanly possible; we aim to worship YHVH the Elohim of the Scriptures. My counsel for what it is worth: is be lead by the word of Elohim. Be careful of false prophets who are among us. We are warned about them in 2 Peter 2: 1 & 17 – 20, as follows: ***'But false prophets also arose among the people, just as there will also be false teachers among you, who will secretly introduce destructive heresies even denying (from the Greek 'arneomai' – also meaning contradict) the Master who bought them, bringing swift destruction upon themselves. (17) These are springs without water, and mists driven by a storm, for whom the black darkness has been reserved. (18) For speaking out arrogant words of vanity they entice by fleshly desires, by sensuality, those who barely escape from the ones who live in error, (19) promising them freedom they themselves are slaves of corruption (Satan's); for by what a man is overcome, by this he is enslaved. (20) For if after they have escaped the defilements of the world by the knowledge of the Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah, they are again entangled in them and are overcome, the last state has become worse for them than the first.'*** Selah!

Chapter 32: The Eternal.

Do you feel blessed because you have been called by YHVH during this age? I do and so should all of us; we read appropriately in Romans 8: 28 – 30, ***‘And we know that Elohim causes all things to work together for good to those who love Elohim, to those who are called according to His purpose.*** (29) ***For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the first-born among many brethren;*** (30) ***and whom He predestined, these He also called; and whom He called these He also justified; and whom He justified, these He also glorified.*** What is the purpose spoken about in verse 28. Let us turn to another book penned by Rav Shaul for the answer. In 1 Corinthians 1: 26 – 31 we read: ***‘For consider your calling, brethren, that there were not many wise according to the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble;*** (27) ***but Elohim has chosen the foolish things of the world to shame the wise, and Elohim has chosen the weak things of the world to shame the things which are strong,*** (28) ***and the base things of the world and the despised, Elohim has chosen, the things that are not that He might nullify the things that are,*** (29) ***that no man should boast before Elohim.*** (30) ***But by His doing you are in Messiah Yahshua, who became to us wisdom from Elohim, and righteous and sanctification, and redemption,*** (31) ***that, just as it is written, “LET HIM WHO BOAST, BOAST IN YHVH.”***

Everything that our Father does, He does with a purpose. YHVH is our creator and as we read in the book of Malachi, He decides to whom He shows favor and to whom not. We read in Malachi 1: 2 – 4, ***“‘I have loved you,” says YHVH. But you say “How hast Thou loved us?” “Was not Esau Jacob’s brother?” declares YHVH. “Yet I have loved Jacob;*** (3) ***but I have hated Esau, and I have made his mountains desolation, and appointed his inheritance for the jackals of the wilderness.”*** (4) ***Though Edom says, “We have been beaten down, but we will return and build up the ruins”; thus says YHVH of hosts, “They may build, but I will tear down; and men will call them***

the wicked territory, and the people toward whom YHVH is indignant forever.” The same thought is resumed in Malachi 2, where reading from verses 2 to 17 we can deduce that YHVH has chosen the nation of Judah, to be the defender of the covenant that He made with Levi, concerning His Feast Days. We read in verse 10: ***“Do we not all have one father? Has not one Elohim created us? Why do we deal treacherously each against his brother so as to profane the covenant of our fathers?*** The note alongside this verse in the New American Standard Bible refers us to Isaiah 63: 16, which states: ***‘For Thou art our Father though Abraham does not know us, And Israel does not recognize us. Thou, O YHVH, art our Father, Our Redeemer from of old is Thy name.’*** This undoubtedly has to do with the way we are dealing with Judah (and the other way round). In verse 11 of Malachi 2, YHVH tells us through Malachi that Judah, like her sister Israel, has dealt treacherously towards Him. In verse 12 & 13 of Malachi we read: ***“As for the man who does this, may YHVH cut off from the tents of Jacob everyone who awakes and answers, or who presents an offering to YHVH of hosts. (13) And this is another thing you do: you cover the altar of YHVH with tears, with weeping and with groaning, because He no longer regards the offering or accepts it with favor from your hand.”*** We see here, YHVH saying that everyone who awakes and answers (those who wake up to the truth and who answer His call - the first fruits⁴⁶), or who presents an offering to YHVH of hosts (those keeping His Set-apart Days), deals treacherously against his brother, shall be cut off from the tents of Jacob (the people of YHVH). Malachi likens it to a man who has dealt treacherously with the wife of his youth. In verse 16 YHVH tells us that He hates divorce and him who covers his garment with wrong. We know from Jeremiah 3: 8 that YHVH divorced Israel because of all her adulteries, and even though Judah followed Israel in her harlotry, YHVH did not divorce Judah for her deeds.

⁴⁶ In James 1: 18 we read that: ***‘In the exercise of His (Elohim’s) will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’***

Continuing in verse 17 of Malachi 2, we read: ***‘You have wearied YHVH with your words. Yet you say, “How have we wearied Him?” In that you say, “Everyone who does evil is good in the sight of YHVH, and He delights in them,” or “Where is the Elohim of justice?”’*** What is the gist of Malachi 2? Reading between the lines, we can conclude that it has to do with believers who assume that even though the Scriptures affirm Judah to be the custodians of the Oracles of Elohim; it does not hold water any longer, as they have also profaned the sanctuary of Elohim. Such believers have consequently, decided to determine the ‘correct’ timing for their feasts (and in some cases when the Sabbath starts) from guidelines found in the Scriptures rather than to follow the calculated calendar that the Jews observe. Malachi 2 also declares that by so doing, these called out believers are questioning Elohim’s judgment, inferring that He delights in those who do evil in His sight. Malachi argues that since YHVH is our creator, He like a master potter has the right to decide our destiny. YHVH accordingly states in verse 9 of Malachi 2: ***“So I also have made you despised and abased before all the people, just as you are not keeping My ways, but are showing partiality in the instruction.”*** The question that we need to answer is: How long are we going to deal treacherously with brother Judah? When we learn to obey the word of Elohim, we will also stop corrupting Elohim’s covenant with Levi. The Scriptures contain all the information we require to exist and respond to YHVH in an acceptable way. All we need to do is follow His teachings, instead of that of men. We need to be mindful of Yahshua’s words in Matthew 22: 14, saying: ***“For many are called, but few are chosen.”***

The Scriptures are not difficult to understand. Our first step in studying the Scriptures should be to ask for wisdom. Secondly, we should ask for more of the Set-apart Spirit to lead us into all truth. We should be mindful of the fact that today is the day of salvation of those called during this age. YHVH never changes – He is eternal and that is the meaning of His name. His word never fails and no man can change it. No man can say that he has the talent to add or take away from the word of YHVH. And those who are trying to do so are writing their own epitaph. When

does anyone change the unalterable, except in the minds of men that Satan so deceitfully seeks to destroy? How many lessons are required for one to understand that YHVH is in charge of all good things, and that evil exists only through Satan, who is destined to the lake of fire, together with the beast and the false prophet? When we consider the end result and how some continue to follow the father of lies in rebellion, how far down the road must they go before they realize the destiny of their lies? Yet with all the facts some continue on the road that leads to destruction.

When studying the Scriptures we need to remember that we are not only reading a book, but the very word of Elohim. It is the words of YHVH spoken to us directly. In addition we are not only reading the words, we are ingesting them, so as to improve our lives. We need to recognize the authority of the word of Elohim and come to realize that with YHVH there are only two ways; One is following Him and the other is not. We also need to be mindful that our lives are not our own and that we have been called from before the foundation of the universe. We should therefore study the Scriptures with a view to clean up our lives and to get to know YHVH our Elohim and His plan of Salvation for all mankind. We get to know Elohim's Plan of Salvation by keeping the Feast Days of Elohim. As a bride needs to know the husband that she is going to marry in the future, we need to get to know YHVH, the one with whom we are going to spend eternity. In our present state as human beings we cannot fully understand the term eternity, as we only have the physical to peer through. Eternity means forever and none of us have been there. All we have at this point in time is prove from the word of YHVH and faith.

As mentioned earlier the name of YHVH means the Eternal – I am, also implying I was and I will be. In Exodus 3: 14 we read: ***'And Elohim said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM"; and He said, "Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel, I AM has sent me to you,"'*** The footnote against I AM in the New American Standard Bible reads: 'Related to the name of G-d, YHVH, rendered L-RD, which is derived from the verb HAYAH, to be.'

In fact transliterated from Hebrew, I AM WHO I AM is pronounced as EHEYEH ASHER EHEYEH (meaning I will be whatever I will be). That essentially means that YHVH is our healer; He is our provider, but also that He is our Savior Yahshua. This brings us to the Shema, which is recorded in Deuteronomy 6: 4 - 9. In English the Shema reads as follows: **“Hear, O Israel! YHVH is our Elohim, YHVH is one!** In Hebrew it reads: שמע ישראל יהוה אלהינו יהוה אחד

Continuing in verse 5 – 9: **“And you shall love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your all your soul and with all your might. (6) And these words, which I am commanding you today, shall be on your heart; (7) and you shall teach them diligently to your sons and shall talk of them when you sit in your house and when you walk by the way and when you lie down and when you rise up. (8) And you shall bind them as a sign on your hand and they shall be as frontals on your forehead. (9) And you shall write them on the doorposts of your house and on your gates.”**

The Shema articulates the fundamental principal which differentiates followers of YHVH from the pagan world. The word Shema simply means hear in English. Hear summons the believer to listen to the significant message that follows. As opposed to seeing, which may lead to idolatry; hearing leads to obedience. What is heard is the least dimensional to accept without visual interference, allowing the hearer to focus his/her attention to the spoken word. Clearly spoken words that can be heard leads to obedience. The Name YHVH, written as four vowels IAUE in English and pronounced Yah-oo-e, or in its short form Yahweh/YHVH. (YH is pronounced Yah; the W or vav is pronounced as a double u or uu; and the final H (He) is pronounced e, the H in the final He being quiet. This is the name by which the Creator introduced Himself to Moses, saying that it is His Name forever, and His memorial-name to all generations. He is the one who created the heavens and the earth. He is the one who spoke all things into existence, and He sustains them

with the Word of His power. YHVH is our Elohim and He seeks a personal relationship with each one of us on an individual basis.

The Shema focuses on the One who spoke everything into existence. He is the One and only Creator, set apart from the plurality of pagan deities. The final letters in the words Shema and Echad are enlarged in the Hebrew Shema.

The Ayin ׀ is enlarged to distinguish it from the letter Alef א which sounds the same, but would change the meaning from:

Hear (Shema) שמע to perhaps שמא.

The Daled ד is enlarged to distinguish it from the Resh ר, so as not to confuse these look-alike letters, changing the meaning from: One אחד to another אחר.

The fact that our Creator is one and not several, therefore becomes clear. The letter Ayin and Daled combined spells the Hebrew word Ed עד meaning witness. In Isaiah 43: 10 – 11 we read: ***“You are My witnesses (Edai עדי),” declares YHVH, “And My servant whom I have chosen, In order that you may know and believe Me, And understand that I am He. Before Me there was no Elohim formed, And there will be none after Me. (11) I, even I, am YHVH; And there is no savior besides Me.”***

We do not have to work out how to worship YHVH, since He recorded the way that it should be done in His word. This requires that we study His word to find out exactly how to worship Him. We know that Yahshua is the word of YHVH made flesh. We know that He is our Messiah, since He has proven His Messiahship, by being resurrected three full nights and three full days after His death and burial on late the afternoon of the 14th of Aviv 31 CE, just as He said. Yahshua was the perfect example to show us how to live and also how we will one day be resurrected, like He was. We, the remnant according to Elohim’s choice are from the ten lost tribes of the house of Israel as we read in Roman 11: 5. In Romans 11: 11 we read why our Jewish brothers, are blind to Yahshua, as follows: ***‘I say then, they did***

not stumble so as to fall, did they? May it never be! But by their transgression salvation has come to the Gentiles (those lost Israelites who started thinking they are Gentiles), to make them jealous.’ In Romans 11: 32 we see that YHVH himself has blinded our Jewish brothers (and the rest of Israel), so that eventually He may have mercy on all. At that time all Israel will be saved. In the meantime we who are called at this time are to make our Jewish brothers jealous. How do we make them jealous? By observing pagan festivals like Xmas and Easter? No, but by keeping the Feast Days of YHVH at the same time as they do!

YHVH is one and there is only one way to worship Him. We cannot work out our own system of worship, or worship YHVH like the pagans worshipped their gods. We either do it His way or not at all. We read in Revelation 3: 14 – 17, talking about the ecclesia in Laodicea that they were lackadaisical in their worshipping YHVH, as follows: ***“And to the angel of the church in Laodicea write: The Amein, the faithful and true Witness, the Beginning (Beginner) of the creation of Elohim, says this: (15) I know your deeds, that you are neither cold nor hot. (16) so because you are luke-warm, and neither hot nor cold, I will spit you out of my mouth. (17) Because you say, “I am rich, and have become wealthy, and have need of nothing,” and you do not know that you are wretched and miserable and poor and blind and naked.”*** Continuing in verses 18 and 19 of Revelation 3, we read: ***‘I advise you to buy from Me gold refined by fire, that you may become rich, and white garments, that you may clothe yourself, and that the shame of your nakedness may not be revealed; and eyesalve to anoint your eyes, that you may see. (19) Those whom I love, I reprove and discipline; be zealous therefore and repent.’*** Verse 18 stresses that we should buy gold from YHVH, not from other sources and the white garments mentioned here have to do with keeping Elohim’s Torah. Let us therefore get rid of false doctrines and serve the Eternal (YHVH), the ONE and only true Elohim!

Chapter 33: How many roads to salvation?

Do you believe that there are many roads that lead to salvation? Most of the churches of the world have set procedures to admit new believers into their groups. These procedures differ greatly from one group to another, even amongst those of the same religion, such as Christianity. Some believe that their members should be christened as babies, by sprinkling water on them, whilst others immerse adult believers in a river, pool or lake. Some believe that one should be immersed in the name of their Savior and others believe that immersion is not required. Do these believers obtain their different beliefs and customs from the Scriptures? And does it really matter to YHVH what we do if we claim to believe in Him?

There are so many different and sometimes contradictory methods of becoming a member of a religious group, that it is no wonder that many have become skeptical about religion. To many today, immersion may sound like a peculiar custom and to suggest that it is required to attain eternal life is simply ridiculous. How about you? Is this your opinion of religion too? What did Yahshua our Messiah have to say about it? Firstly Yahshua said in Matthew 7: 13 & 14 ***“Enter by the narrow gate; for the gate is wide, and the way is broad that leads to destruction, and many are those who enter by it. (14) For the gate is small, and the way is narrow that leads to life, and few are those who find it.”*** This tells us that there is only one road that leads to salvation and that it is difficult to follow. Secondly Yahshua said in John 6: 44 that: ***“No one can come to Me, unless the Father who sent Me draws him; and I will raise him up on the last day.”*** From this it is obvious that the process of coming to Elohim, is started by Him, and that we are only left with the choice to either accept or reject His call. Yahshua stressed that following YHVH and His Torah is a calling, as is recorded in verse 45 of John 6: ***“It is written in the prophets, ‘AND THEY SHALL ALL BE TAUGHT OF ELOHIM.’ Everyone who has heard and learned from the Father come to Me.”***

In Matthew 16: 19 Yahshua the rock of our Salvation gave Peter the **'keys of the kingdom of heaven.'** Peter understood what Yahshua meant and when asked by the men of Judea what they should do to receive a portion of Elohim's Spirit, giving them access to eternal life, he said in Acts 2: 38, **"Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit."** Immersion is the most significant commitment that a believer can make in his life. If we accept Elohim's offer He allows us to become his children, as we read in John 1: 12, **'But as many as received Him (Yahshua), to them He gave the right to become children of Elohim, even to those who believe in His name⁴⁷.'** Immersion means much more than to join a specific church or religion. It is a decision that can only be made after careful consideration of the cost involved. Yahshua warned His followers to count the cost before committing their lives to Him in Luke 14: 27 – 33, as follows: **"Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after Me cannot be My disciple. (28) For which one of you, when he wants to build a tower, does not first sit down and calculate the cost, to see if he has enough to complete it? (29) Otherwise, when he has laid a foundation, and is not able to finish, all who observe it begin to ridicule him, (30) saying, 'This man began to build and was not able to finish.' (31) Or what king, when he sets out to meet another king in battle, will not first sit down and take counsel with ten thousand men to encounter the one coming against him with twenty thousand? (32) Or else, while the other is still far away, he sends a delegation and asks terms of peace. (33) So therefore, no one of you can be My disciple who does not give up all his own possessions."** We must be prepared to give up the way we live, and sometimes even our friends and family, to follow Yahshua. Repentance and immersion is an act symbolizing the extent of our commitment – our very first step on the narrow road leading to salvation.

⁴⁷ Yahshua's name means the salvation of YHVH.

Repentance is the beginning of our relationship with YHVH. What does it mean to repent? Scriptures describe repentance as an intense realization of our sins, resulting in sorrow that leads us to change our lives for the better. It is a sincere personal demonstration of submission to YHVH, recognizing that He reconciled us to Himself through Messiah (as per 2 Corinthians 5: 18). We read in Romans 5: 8 – 10, ***'But Elohim demonstrates His own love toward us, in that while we were yet sinners, Messiah died for us. (9) Much more then, having now been justified by His blood, we shall be saved from the wrath of Elohim through Him. (10) For if while we were enemies, we were reconciled to Elohim through the death of His Son, much more, having been reconciled, we shall be saved by His life.'***

As human beings, it is not possible for us to surrender totally to Elohim on our own. We even need help to fully realize what sin is. That is why Elohim must grant us repentance, as we read in Acts 11: 18, ***'And when they heard this they quieted down, and glorified Elohim, saying, "Well then, Elohim has granted to the Gentiles also the repentance that leads to life."*** Additionally we need the desire to choose whether to repent or not. Even our impulse to repent comes from Elohim, as we read in Philippians 2: 13, ***'for it is Elohim's who is at work in you, both to will and to work for His good pleasure.'*** Our Father YHVH wants everyone to eventually come to repentance, as we read in 1 Timothy 2: 3 & 4: ***'This is good and acceptable in the sight of Elohim our Savior, (4) who desires all men to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.'*** However, He is not forcing anyone to repent. We have to follow Him out of our own free will. Elohim's mercy never fails, but we have to forsake our evil thoughts and ways, when we come to Him. We read accordingly in Isaiah 55: 7 & 8, ***'Let the wicked forsake his way, And the unrighteous man his thoughts; And let him return to YHVH, And He will have compassion on him; And to our Elohim, For He will abundantly pardon. (8) "For My thoughts are not your thoughts, Neither are your ways My ways," declares YHVH.'***

It is only when we change our thoughts that right actions will follow. Blameless thoughts and the right attitude result in righteous behavior. The point is that we need to think like Elohim. But how is it possible for us mere mortals, to think like Him? YHVH reveals the way He thinks through His Word or The Scriptures. The only way in which we may learn to think like Elohim, is to study The Scriptures. Yahshua confirmed this in Matthew 4: 4, saying: ***“It is written, ‘MAN SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUTH OF ELOHIM.’”*** Only when we are truly repentant, will we search the Word of Elohim, to determine what to change and how to live. In addition YHVH requires that we demonstrate our love and faith in Him through good works. We read the word of YHVH in James 2: 20 & 26, saying: ***‘But are you willing to recognize, you foolish fellow, that faith without works is useless? (26) For just as the body without the spirit (of Elohim indwelling us) is dead, so also faith without works is dead.’*** We can talk the talk but are we also willing to walk the walk?

Our works cannot save us, but we show Elohim that we love Him, by keeping His teachings. We read in 1 John 2: 3 – 6, talking about Yahshua, as follows: ***‘And by this we know that we have come to know Him, if we keep His commandments. (4) The one who says, “I have come to know Him,” and does not keep His commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him; (5) but whoever keeps His word, in him the love of Elohim has truly been perfected. By this we know that we are in Him: (6) the one who says he abides in Him ought himself to walk in the same manner as He walked.’*** This means that we should follow the example which Messiah left for us when He walked the earth 2000 years ago. What is the purpose of good works? We read Yahshua’s own words in this regard, in Matthew 5: 16, as follows: ***“Let your light shine before men in such a way that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in heaven.”*** Yes, our good works do not earn us salvation, but they honor and glorify Elohim. People, who do not follow YHVH in the way that He prescribes in His Word, are simply not honoring His Set-apart

Name. There are many today, who use the correct names of YHVH and Yahshua, but refuse to honor His Name. They profess to know YHVH, but in their deeds deny or contradict His word as we read in Titus 1: 16.

Some believers seem to think that they can do anything and eat anything, since Yahshua has died for the sins of the entire world. They believe that our works do not ever earn us anything. But what do the Scriptures have to say about this. We read in Romans 2: 13, ***‘for not the hearers of the Law are just before Elohim, but the doers of the Law will be justified.’*** Yahshua explained that he would prepare a place (or position) for those who follow Him in John 14: 3. In the coming kingdom of Elohim, there will be many positions of rulership and authority under Messiah, which YHVH will grant to those who overcome Satan, the world and themselves. We read this in Revelation 2: 26 ***‘And he who overcomes, and he who keeps My deeds until the end, to him I will give authority over the nations.’*** We read furthermore in Revelation 3: 21, that ***‘He who overcomes, I will grant to him to sit down with Me on My throne, as I also overcame and sat down with My Father on His throne.’*** We read in Revelation 20 in the last part of verse 4 and verse 6 that the resurrected saints (and those who are alive at Messiah’s return – will be changed into immortal beings), will come to rule with Messiah for a thousand years. Even though our works will not earn us salvation, they will determine the reward we will earn in the kingdom of Elohim, as Yahshua explained in the parable of the talents in Matthew 25: 14 – 29.

However, to most of us, the change that Elohim requires in us appears so overwhelming, that true repentance seems impossible. The point is that without Elohim’s intervention in our lives it is impossible. This is why Yahshua explained in Mark 10: 23 – 27, saying: ***“How hard it will be for those who are wealthy to enter the kingdom of Elohim!”*** (24) ***And the disciples were amazed at His words. But Yahshua answered again and said to them, “Children, how hard it is to enter the kingdom of Elohim!*** (25) ***It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the***

kingdom of Elohim.” (26) And they were even more astonished and said to Him, “Then who can be saved?” (27) Looking upon them, Yahshua said, “With men it is impossible, but not with Elohim; for all things are possible with Elohim.” This is telling us that for true repentance, we have to rely on YHVH and not on ourselves. If we truly want to commit our lives to YHVH, we have to ask Him for His gift of repentance! Yahshua our Messiah said in Matthew 7: 7, **“Ask, and it shall be given to you; seek, and you shall find; knock, and it shall be opened to you.”** If we keep seeking, YHVH will open His word to our understanding. We do not have to study external material for truth – Elohim’s word the Scriptures is truth.

If we follow the exact steps as set out in the Scriptures, we will have access to eternal life or salvation. If we truly repent and are immersed in Yahshua’s Name, we are almost there. Next we need to have the elders lay hands on us, to receive the Set-apart Spirit, as we read in Acts 8: 12, 14 – 17: **‘But when they believed Philip preaching the good news about the kingdom of Elohim and the name of Yahshua Messiah they were being immersed, men and women alike. (14) Now when the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of Elohim, they sent Peter and John, (15) who came down and prayed for them, that they might receive the Set-apart Spirit. (16) For He had not yet fallen upon any of them; they had simply been immersed in the name of the Master Yahshua. (17) Then they began laying their hands on them, and they were receiving the Set-apart Spirit.’**

As those of you who have been immersed may recall, immersion symbolizes us being united with Messiah in death. It pictures Messiah’s death for the forgiveness of our sins, but also our own symbolic death and burial. As a reminder, let us read Roman 6: 3 - 7, as follows: **‘Or do you not know that all of us who have been immersed into Messiah Yahshua have been immersed into His death? (4) Therefore we have been buried with Him through immersion into death, in order that as Messiah was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, so we too might walk in newness of life. (5) For if we have become**

united with Him in the likeness of His death, certainly we shall be also in the likeness of His resurrection, (6) knowing this, that our old self was crucified with Him, that our body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin; (7) for he who has died is freed from sin.' Since YHVH has paid the price for our sin, we now belong to Him. As we read in Romans 6: 18, we are no longer slaves to sin, but of righteousness. Immersion not only depicts our death to sin, but also describes our resurrection to life in Messiah.

After our immersion and the laying on of hands, YHVH gives us a deposit of our inheritance, with a view to redemption. We read this in 2 Corinthians 1: 22, ***who also sealed us and gave us the Spirit in our hearts as a down payment*** (or pledge). A second witness to this may be read in Ephesians 1: 13 & 14. Once we have been immersed we enter into a life long commitment with YHVH: it means that we are in a covenant relationship, which we renew annually, when we are reminded of Yahshua's broken body and His shed blood, for both our physical and spiritual healing, at the Passover. We need the Set-apart Spirit to lead us into all truth; to bring us into remembrance of Yahshua's teachings; and to disclose to us the things to come (as per Yahshua's own words in John 14: 26 and 16: 13). Overcoming those sins that have become habits in our lives, do not happen immediately. Repentance is a lifelong process, involving much effort. We read Rav Shaul's words' regarding this continues battle in Romans 7: 18 - 23, stating: ***'For I know that nothing good dwells in me, that is, in my flesh; for the wishing is present in me, but the doing of the good is not. (19) For the good that I wish, I do not do; but I practice the very evil that I do not wish. (20) But if I am doing the very thing I do not wish, I am no longer the one doing it, but sin which dwells in me. (21) I find then the principle that evil is present in me, the one who wishes to do good. (22) For I joyfully concur with the law of Elohim in the inner man, (23) but I see a different law in the members of my body, waging war against the law of my mind and making me a prisoner of the law of sin which is in me members.'***

Nevertheless, Rav Shaul also said that without the help of the Set-apart Spirit of YHVH, it is impossible to control our sinful natures. We read this in Romans 8: 13, ***'for if you are living according to the flesh, you must die; but if by the Spirit you are putting to death the deeds of the body, you will live.'*** The mistake that some make, is to believe that once they are immersed, Elohim does everything for them. We need to stir up the Set-apart Spirit in us as Rav Shaul reminded Timothy in 2 Timothy 1: 6 & 7, as follows: ***'And for this reason I remind you to kindle afresh the gift of Elohim which is in you through the laying on of my hands. (7) For Elohim has not given us a Spirit of timidity, but of power and love and discipline.'*** We need to grow in grace and knowledge by studying the Word of YHVH, so that we may clean up our lives. We also need to grow in the fruit of the Spirit as we read in Galatians 5: 22 & 23. It is vital that we produce the fruits of righteousness.

When we are immersed into the saving Name of Yahshua, YHVH removes our sins as far as the east is from the west. He remembers it no more and so should we. It is normal for us to feel guilty when we break the commandments. After we repent, Elohim forgives all our transgressions and there remains no reason for feeling guilty, unless we continue to practice the same sins. Even then we should repent and ask Elohim to apply the sacrifice of Yahshua to our lives again and forgive our sins and guilt. As YHVH our Elohim forgets our sin, so should we. YHVH wants us to repent of our past sins, He does not require penance. He does not want us to recall our old sins before Him, He has already forgotten it, and so should we. After immersion we should start a new life. We should study Elohim's word with a view to improve our lives and overcome those sins which so beset us. As we study the word of YHVH, we will discover things which we are required to do, such as when we read in Galatians 3: 26 – 29: ***'For you are all sons of Elohim through faith in Messiah Yahshua. (27) For all of you who were immersed into Messiah have clothed yourselves with Messiah. (28) There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free man, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in Messiah Yahshua. (29) And if you belong to Messiah,***

then you are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to promise. What does this mean? If we read about the covenant promise made by YHVH to Abraham in Genesis 17: 6 – 12, we realize that since we have now become Abraham's offspring through Messiah, every male among us should also be circumcised. Why? Because we are like Isaac children of promise (as per Galatians 4: 28).

We read in the last part of Revelation 1 verse 5 and verse 6: ***'To Him who loves us, and released us from our sins by His blood, (6) and He has made us to be a kingdom, priests to His Elohim and Father, to Him be the glory and dominion forever and ever. Amen.'*** Yes, when we initially come to repentance, we are not compelled to be circumcised immediately. This is exactly the message we read about in Acts 15. However, Act 15: 21 indicates that we should attend the synagogue in our area to learn Torah. Today you may do this by obtaining Torah teachings from a ministry like ours, where we send out Torah teachings for use by distant members, during Sabbath services. It is by studying and being taught Torah that we will eventually come to learn that we have to be both circumcised in the heart (immersion) and the flesh (applicable to male believers only). We read in Ezekiel 44, a prophecy about the millennial rule of Messiah, YHVH saying in verses 6 - 9: ***'And you shall say to the rebellious ones, to the house of Israel, "Thus says YHVH Elohim, 'Enough of all your abominations, O house of Israel, (7) when you brought in foreigners, uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh, to be in My sanctuary to profane it, even My house, when you offered My food, the fat and the blood; for they made My covenant void – this in addition to your abominations. (8) And you have not kept charge of My holy things yourselves, but you have set foreigners to keep charge of My sanctuary. (9) Thus says YHVH Elohim, "No foreigner, uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh, of all the foreigners who are among the sons of Israel, shall enter My sanctuary.'***

When our Father Abram was circumcised as a sign of the covenant between him and YHVH, his name was changed to Abraham. Since then all Israelites and their children were circumcised at the age of eight days old. However, many of us (Israelites), who lost our identity, became like gentiles and stopped having our children circumcised, because we erroneously came to believe that the Torah was done away with. The quote from Ezekiel above, should make us think: If we who believe that we are already a kingdom of priests, think we are circumcised in heart, and refuse to be circumcised in the flesh, is that not rebellion? Can we truly have a circumcised heart, and yet refuse Elohim's commandment for a fleshly one, too? It is just a matter of which comes first. We have seen that Abraham was circumcised in heart, first. His obedience and faith in Yahweh preceded his fleshly circumcision. However, because circumcision is of the flesh, it has nothing to do with our salvation, but everything with living in the land of Israel and as we have seen in Ezekiel 44, our being kings and priests in the coming kingdom of Elohim.

Immersion and the laying on of hands are only the beginning steps on the narrow road to eternal life. Prior to arriving at our final destination, there are many miles to travel. We will still have to face many trials and test on our way. These trials will help us build the character, required to last into eternity. We read what Rav Yaa'kov (James) said about this in James 1: 2 - 4: ***'Consider it all joy, my brethren, when you encounter various trials, (3) knowing that the testing of your faith produces endurance. (4) And let endurance have its perfect result, that you may be perfect and complete, lacking in nothing.'*** Like a small child we have to learn to walk. At first we fall often, as trials and temptations come our way. But whilst practicing righteousness, we will eventually become mature believers. Our main goal should be to seek the kingdom of Elohim and His righteousness. We need to pray and study regularly to ensure that we stay on course. The kingdom of Elohim will be a literal kingdom ruling the earth, replacing all other governments. If we continue in a life of overcoming, we will rule with Messiah as kings and priests for a thousand years, and

on into eternity. As long as we continue to seek Elohim's will in our lives, He will allow His Set-apart Spirit to work in our lives, thus guaranteeing our eventual salvation.

There is only one road to eternal life. Let us therefore consider our calling as we are admonished by Rav Kepha in 2 Peter 1: 10 & 11, as follows: ***'Therefore, brethren, be all the more diligent to make certain about His calling and choosing you; for as long as you practice these things, you will never stumble; (11) for in this way the entrance into the eternal kingdom of our Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah will be abundantly supplied to you.'***

Chapter 34: Yahshua as Savior and King.

Yahshua existed throughout eternity as the Word. We read in 1 John 1: 1 & 2: ***'What was from the beginning, what we have heard, what we have seen with our eyes, what we beheld and our hands handled, concerning the Word of Life – (2) and the life was manifested and we have seen and bear witness and proclaim to you the eternal life, which was with the Father and was manifested to us.'*** John starts this letter to the ecclesia, by talking about ***'the beginning'*** as he had in his Gospel. He said that Yahshua was ***'from the beginning'*** and that he bore witness to that eternal life, the Word, Messiah Yahshua. The Word who became Yahshua Messiah referred to himself as the I AM (the one who exists) in John 8: 24, 28 & 58. In Revelation 1: 17 the risen Messiah said to John: ***"Do not be afraid; I am the first and the last."*** According to these Scriptures Yahshua was clearly Elohim. Rav Shaul wrote about Him in Philippians 2: 6 – 8, stating: ***'who although He existed in the form of Elohim, did not regard equality with Elohim a thing to be grasped, (7) but emptied Himself, taking the form of a bond-servant and being made in the likeness of them. (8) And being found in appearance as a man, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even the death of the tree.'***

Yahshua as we know lived a perfect life and paid the penalty for all human sin – past, present and future. He was then resurrected back to the eternal life, which He possessed before as the Word of Elohim. In fact shortly before His impalement, Yahshua prayed as recorded in John 17: 5: ***"And now, glorify Thou Me together with Thyself, Father, with the glory which I had with Thee before the world was."*** Yahshua ***'the image of the invisible Elohim'*** as per Colossians 1: 15 came to reveal the existence and character of YHVH. The Word will also return to the earth as Messiah to rule the nations of the world during the coming millennium. The Word created the universe and everything that exists on earth, including all human beings. The Word was Elohim transformed into a man. He walked among us. Yes Elohim the Supreme Being looked into human eyes, talked

to human ears, worked, ate and drank with men and women. A divine, eternal spirit being, the Creator and Ruler of the universe touched human hands. Even though these occurrences defy human imagination, it actually happened about 2000 years ago. We read this in Hebrews 2: 9, ***'But we do see Him who has been made for a little while lower than the angels, namely, Yahshua, because of the suffering of death crowned with glory and honor, that by the grace of Elohim, He might taste death for everyone.'***

Yahshua had another great responsibility, beyond dying for the sins of the world. He also had to live a perfect sinless life for all human kind. Rav Shaul wrote about this in Romans 8: 3 & 4, as follows: ***'(For what the Law could not do, weak as it was through the flesh), Elohim (did:) sending His own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh (and as an offering for sin, He) condemned sin in the flesh, (4) (in order) that the requirements of the Law might be fulfilled in us (who do not walk according to the flesh, but according to the Spirit.)'*** Yahshua was in the form of human flesh, yet He was the only 'person' ever born who lived His entire life without ever sinning. Rav Shaul wrote of the risen Messiah in Hebrews 4: 15, saying: ***'For we do not have a high priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has been tempted in all things as we are, yet without sin.'*** As the Word, before his birth as a 'human', He inspired the prophet Isaiah to foretell the brutality that He as Messiah would suffer in Isaiah 53 (verses 3, 5, 7, 8 & 12). He also inspired David to write about His suffering in Psalm 22.

The time finally arrived for Yahshua's sacrifice, preordained before mankind existed. Rav Shaul wrote in Hebrews 9: 24 – 26 ***'For Messiah did not enter a holy place made with hands, a mere copy of the true one, but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of Elohim for us; (25) nor was it that He should offer Himself often, as the high priest enters the holy place year by year with blood not his own. (26) Otherwise, He would have needed to suffer often since the foundation of the world; but now once at the consummation of the ages He has been manifested to put away sin by the***

sacrifice of Himself.’ Yahshua offered Himself outside Jerusalem almost 2000 years ago. When He died He cried out, as recorded in Matthew 27: 46: **“MY EL, MY EL, WHY HAST THOU FORSAKEN ME?”** He uttered the same words that He inspired David to write in Psalm 22: 1. At the time Peter wanted to fight to prevent Yahshua from being arrested and crucified. However, Yahshua told him in Matthew 26: 52 – 54: **“Put your sword back into its place; for all those who take up the sword shall perish by the sword. (53) Or do you think that I cannot appeal to My Father, and He will at once put at My disposal more that twelve legions of angels? (54) How then shall the Scriptures be fulfilled, that it must happen this way?”**

Elohim’s plan had to move forward. Elohim’s plan of salvation for all mankind always took precedence and nothing could stop it. Even while in agony during His life, Yahshua put the fate of humanity before His own needs. We read His prayer knowing his own demise looming on the horizon in John 12: 27: **“Now My soul has become troubled; and what shall I say, ‘Father, save Me from this hour?’ But for this purpose I came to this hour.”** In that context the verse recorded in John 3: 16 takes on a profound meaning: **“For Elohim so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.”** Likewise we read in Romans 8: 31 and 32: **‘What then shall we say to these things? If Elohim is for us who is against us? (32) He who did not spare His own Son, but delivered Him up for us all, how will He not also with Him give us all things?’** The goal was finally reached that Passover afternoon, as Yahshua hung on the stake, in pain, bleeding and saying: **“It is finished.”** And as we read in Luke 23: 46 **‘And Yahshua, crying out with a loud voice, said, “Father, INTO THY HANDS I COMMIT MY SPIRIT.” And having said this, He breathed His last.’** With His death Yahshua cancelled out the certificate of debt for the penalty of sin that all humans incurred. He reconciled us back to the Father – so that we may approach Elohim’s throne directly in prayer, in Yahshua’s saving name.

At this point in time Elohim began calling individuals out of sin and in this way the prophecies of forgiveness would be fulfilled. To remind us of some of these prophecies, let us read Micah 7: 19, as follows: ***'He will again have compassion on us; He will tread our iniquities under foot. Yes, Thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea.'*** Followed by the last part of Isaiah 38: 17: ***'For Thou hast cast all my sins behind Thy back.'*** The called out individuals would become Elohim's own elect. Rav Kepha wrote about us in 1 Peter 2: 9 – 10, as follows: ***'But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for Elohim's own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light; (10) for you once were not a people, but now you are the people of Elohim; you had not received mercy, but now you have received mercy.'*** This last statement is in fact a reverse of the curse that YHVH placed on us, the lost house of Israel in Hosea 1: 1- 9.

An important point to be understood at this point. Why doesn't everyone on earth understand these truths? Are they to be lost? The answer is a resounding no! Prior to the death and resurrection of Yahshua, only a few individuals were chosen to perform special responsibilities. Their accounts have been recorded in the Tanach: They were such people as Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Sarah, Moses, Deborah, Samuel, David, Isaiah, Ester and a handful of others. The uncounted numbers from Adam to Messiah were not yet given an opportunity for salvation. During the time from Messiah's resurrection, ascension and second coming, Elohim has been calling only a selected few to be part of His elect, or first fruits. These are known as the remnant according to Elohim's gracious choice as per Romans 11: 5 – 7. The rest were hardened – meaning simply that they lack the Set-apart Spirit as a gift of Elohim (Acts 2: 38). Elohim has purposed that only a comparatively few individuals should be part of His called out ones.

However, that will all change when the Word returns as the Messiah and King. With Satan out of the way, Yahshua will remove spiritual blindness and all people will have an opportunity

to be saved, Micah showed that Messiah's kingdom would be one of truth in Micah 4: 1 – 4, as follows: ***'And it will come about in the last days That the mountain (government) of the house of YHVH Will be established as the chief of the mountains. It will be raised above the hills, And the people will stream to it. (2) And many nations will come and say, "Come and let us go up to the mountain of YHVH And to the house of the Elohim of Jacob, That He may teach us about His ways And that we may walk in His paths."*** For from Zion will go forth the law, Even the word of YHVH from Jerusalem. (3) ***And He will judge between many peoples And render decisions for mighty, distant nations. Then they will hammer their swords into plowshares And their spears into pruning hooks; Nation will not lift up sword against nation, And never again will they train for war. (4) And each of them will sit under his vine And under his fig tree. With no one to make them afraid, For the mouth of YHVH of hosts has spoken.'***

YHVH will then remove human blindness and the hardness of their hearts. We read in Ezekiel 11: 19 – 20 that every human alive will be offered the Set-apart Spirit, as follows: ***"And I shall give them one heart, and shall put a new spirit within them. And I shall take the heart of stone out of their flesh and give them a heart of flesh, (20) that they may walk in My statutes and keep My ordinances, and do them. Then they will be My people, and I shall be their Elohim."*** What about those who lived and died throughout the centuries until Messiah's future return – those who were never called? They will be resurrected to physical life after the millennium rule of Messiah. We read in 1 Timothy 2: 4, that YHVH desires all men to be saved and come to the knowledge of the truth. These people will be given an opportunity to receive eternal life. We read about this in Revelation 20 verse 5 ***'The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were completed. This is the first resurrection.'*** In verse 11 to 12 we read: ***'And I saw a great white throne and Him who was sat upon it, from whose presence earth and heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. (12) And I saw the dead, the great and the***

small, standing before the throne, and books were opened; and another book was opened, which is the book of life; and the dead were judged from the things which were written in the books, according to their deeds." This describes a time in history during which all people who ever lived will come to realize the reason for being born. The Scriptures will be opened to their understanding at this time. This will be similar to when Yahshua in Luke 24: 45 opened His Disciples minds to understanding the Scriptures.

These people will then have their first opportunity to understand and know Elohim's way of life. They will be given a chance to make an informed decision as to whether they want to repent of their past sins. They will be given the opportunity to accept Yahshua as their Master and Savior, or reject His way of life. Eternal life will be offered to the entire multitude who ever lived. Those who accept Yahshua as their Savior will be immersed into His saving name. However, there might be some that will never accept the way of life of YHVH. Their fate is to be burned up once and for all. They will not be tormented forever. Only spiritual beings such as Satan and his demons have that fate facing them. Human beings who are made from flesh and blood will burn until they are turned to ashes. YHVH is a merciful Elohim and He will give all human beings a chance to come to repentance. YHVH will bring the vast majority of mankind back to life and will fill those who willingly follow Him, with his Set-apart Spirit. We read in Romans 11 verse 32 - 36: ***"For Elohim has shut up all in disobedience that He might show mercy on all. (33) Oh, the depth of riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of Elohim! How unsearchable are His judgments and unfathomable His ways! (34) FOR WHO HAS KNOWN THE MIND OF YHVH, OR WHO BECAME HIS COUNSELOR? (35) OR WHO HAS FIRST GIVEN TO HIM THAT IT MIGHT BE PAID BACK TO HIM AGAIN? (36) For from Him and through Him and to Him are all things. To Him be the glory forever. Amen."***

Those who have been called during this age and have obeyed Elohim by keeping His commandments, will have been

resurrected if dead, or changed, if alive, into immortal beings at Messiah's return. Rav Shaul explains in 1 Corinthians 15: 51 & 52 as follows: ***"Behold I tell you a mystery; we shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, (52) in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet; for the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised imperishable and we shall be changed."*** Salvation is described in four parts:

1. Elohim chooses a person to become a first-fruit. We read in Yahshua's own words in John 6: 44 ***"No one can come to Me unless the Father who sent Me draws him; and I will raise him up on the last day."***
2. Next Elohim applies Yahshua's sacrifice to forgive the sins of the repentant person and justifies him/her. We read what Rav Kepha (Peter) said regarding this in Acts 3: 19 ***'Repent therefore and return, that your sins may be wiped away, in order that times of refreshing may come from the presence of YHVH.'***
3. Thirdly, Yahshua lives His life in the repentant believer through the Set-apart Spirit. We read what Rav Shaul says about this in Galatians 2: 20, ***"I have been crucified with Messiah; and it is no longer I, who live, but Messiah lives in me; and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of Elohim, who loved me, and delivered Himself up for me."***
4. Finally the believer is born from above, at Messiah's second coming, to become immortal.

The word of YHVH, Yahshua is central to this entire process. The real hope of a believer is in the resurrection of Yahshua and in His life that He lives in repentant human beings. Rav Shaul puts it like this in Hebrews 12: 2, ***'fixing our eyes on Yahshua, the author and perfecter of faith, who for the joy set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and has sat down at the right hand of the throne of Elohim.'*** Yahshua is the High Priest of those who have submitted their lives to Elohim according to Hebrews 4: 15. He provides pastoral help to bring

them to full spiritual maturity in obedience and submission to Elohim. The Word came in the flesh. That is, Elohim took on flesh, as we read in 1 John 4: 2: ***'By this you know the Spirit of Elohim: every spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh is from Elohim.'*** Similarly we know from Galatians 2: 20 that Yahshua now lives in us and as a result, we now live our lives in faith. What is real faith? It simply means that we have come to believe in Elohim and keep/do His teachings/commandments.

Yahshua promised believers that He would send a 'helper', meaning the Set-apart Spirit to lead them into all truth as per John 14: 26 and John 16: 13. To keep the spiritual laws of Elohim requires the indwelling presence of the Set-apart Spirit in those who choose to obey Him. The Set-apart Spirit does not keep the law for the person, but does it through the repentant person. It is truly a mystery to the average individual. However, it is now made clear as we read in Romans 16: 25, ***'Now to Him who is able to establish you according to my gospel and the preaching of Yahshua Messiah, according to the revelation of the mystery which has been kept secret for long ages past.'*** Every individual called by Elohim is waiting for the return of Messiah. This will be the time of the resurrection of the righteous dead to eternal life. It is Yahshua our Messiah who will open the graves at His return. Speaking of individuals who has been faithful to the calling of the Father, Yahshua said in John 5: 26 – 29 ***"For just as the Father has life in Himself, even so He gave to the Son also to have life in Himself, (27) and He gave Him authority to execute judgment, because He is the Son of Man. (28) Do not marvel at this: for an hour is coming, in which all who are in the tombs shall hear His voice. (29) and shall come forth; those who did the good deeds to a resurrection of life, those who committed evil deeds to a resurrection of judgment.'***

The resurrection to life occurs at Messiah's return. The disciples were standing with the resurrected Messiah on the Mount of Olives. As they watched Him disappear in the clouds, two men in

white clothing appeared besides them, saying, in Acts 1: 11: ***“Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into the sky? This Yahshua, who has been taken up from you into heaven, will come in just the same way as you have watched Him go into heaven.”*** Yahshua will return at a time when the world will be experiencing the great tribulation. He will come to save us from ourselves. It will be a time of great crises and world war, as we read in Revelation 11: 18 ***“And the nations were enraged, and Thy wrath came, and the time came for the dead to be judged, and the time to give their reward to Thy bond-servants the prophets and to the saints and to those who fear Thy name, the small and the great, and to destroy those who destroy the earth.”*** The nations will not welcome the return of Yahshua. They will fight against Him as we read in Revelation 17: 14, as follows: ***“These will wage war against the Lamb, and the Lamb will overcome them, because He is Master of Masters and King of Kings, and those who are with Him are the called and chosen and faithful.”*** The saints made immortal – will rule with Messiah on the earth as we read in Revelation 5: 10 ***“And Thou hast made them to be a kingdom and priests to our Elohim; and they will reign upon the earth.”***

Those human beings obedient and submissive to Elohim will be changed into Spirit beings and will be given ***“authority over the nations”*** as per Revelation 2: 26. What about the rest? During the millennium, Yahshua will make salvation available to every human alive. After the millennium is over, the rest of the dead will also be given their first chance to be called into salvation. Yahshua will also write His laws on their hearts. The second fruits, a much greater harvest will be given an opportunity to salvation. However, as we read in 1 Corinthians 15: 24 – 25 (paraphrased) then comes the end, when Yahshua delivers up the kingdom of Elohim to the Father, when He puts an end to all rule and all authority and power. For He must reign till He has put all enemies under His feet.

Nevertheless, the end is only the beginning. In a vision John saw a new heaven and earth, the first heaven and earth having

passed away. We read in Revelation 21: 3 – 4: ***And I heard a loud voice from the throne, saying, “Behold, the tabernacle of Elohim is among men, and He shall dwell among them, and they shall be His people, and Elohim Himself shall be among them. (4) and He shall wipe away every tear from their eyes; and there shall no longer be any death; there shall no longer be any mourning, or crying, or pain; the first things have passed away.”*** Elohim the Father will dwell with men. No human beings will exist any longer – those who made it will have been changed to immortal Spirit beings. Yahshua Messiah will have brought many sons to glory and will have completed Elohim’s plan of Salvation – the redemption of mankind. Baruch HaShem YHVH!

Chapter 35: Contact details of the Publisher.

The Nazarene Israelite Two House Congregation of Port Elizabeth is based in Port Elizabeth, South Africa. Postal Address: P O Box 15935, Emerald Hill. 6011. Port Elizabeth. South Africa.

Our web site is at: www.nazarene2house.weebly.com

Statement of Beliefs:

We believe:

- That there is only one Elohim, which is Almighty יהוה. Written as four vowels IAUE (in English) and pronounced Yah-oo-e, or in its short form Yahweh/YHVH. In Deuteronomy 6: 4 YHVH states: **"Hear, O Israel – YHVH is your Elohim – YHVH is ONE (ECHAD)."** In Deuteronomy 32: 39 YHVH says: **"See now that I am HE, AND there is no Elohim besides Me"**.
- That YHVH reveals Himself in many ways, characteristics and personalities, which includes, but are not limited to the Heavenly Father, Yahshua the Son, the Word, the Messiah, the Angel or Messenger of YHVH⁴⁸ and the Set Apart Spirit (Ruach HaKodesh). That Yahshua is part of YHVH and is the Physical Image of the Invisible Elohim YHVH.⁴⁹ He is the Messiah who died for the sins of the world and rose from the dead to give assurance of both our forgiveness and everlasting life. In John 8: 24 Yahshua says: **"I said therefore to you, that you shall die in your sins; for unless you believe that I am HE, you shall die in your sins."** He also said in John 10: 30 that **"I and the Father are one"**. In 1 Tim 3: 16 we read **"And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: Elohim**

⁴⁸ Gen 48: 16 (Amplified Bible) the redeeming Angel (not a created being, but YHVH Himself).

⁴⁹ Gen. 1:26 Then Elohim Said, "Let Us make man in Our Image, according to Our likeness;" Yahshua is the Image/likeness of Elohim – see 2 Corinthians 4: 4 & Col. 1: 15.

was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory".

- That Yahshua was born of a virgin and lived a sinless life in accordance with the (Torah) Commandments of Elohim. He was crucified for the atonement of His people and was resurrected on the third day, ascended to heaven from where He will return to usher in the Kingdom of YHVH and will rule the world from Jerusalem.
- That the Bible, which include both the old and the new Covenants, is the divinely inspired and literal Word of YHVH as originally written.
- That the Law, which includes the 613 laws stipulated in the first five books of the Bible, should be observed by all those who want to worship YHVH our Elohim. The Ten Commandments being part and parcel of these 613 laws. The Law is the teachings of Elohim and we see them as the rules according to which we 'live the game of life'. Keeping of the Law can not bring us salvation, as we know that salvation is the free gift of YHVH our Elohim, given to those that love and obey Him. We show our love and obedience to YHVH by keeping His Commandments. These laws regulate moral precepts; dietary regulations; agricultural science; financial success; sexual behavior and religious practice.
- That, as part of the commandments we keep the biblical Sabbath, being the seventh day of the week or Saturday according to the Gregorian calendar in use today. We also keep the biblical Holy Days, ordained by YHVH in Leviticus 23. These Holy Days depict the plan of salvation of YHVH for all mankind and are commanded to be kept forever. We also obey the Commandments regarding clean and unclean meats as specified by YHVH in Leviticus 11. We do this to show our obedience to YHVH and to remain set apart or holy, as YHVH stated in Leviticus 11: 45 ***"You shall be Holy for I am Holy"***.
- That we should be proclaiming the good news of the Kingdom of YHVH as a witness to all nations and the return of Yahshua the Messiah to the earth to come and rule His

people from Jerusalem for a thousand years. Those who believe and practice what Yahshua taught and who overcome, will rule with Yahshua for a thousand years.

- That we as Nazarenes are watchmen over the people of Israel and specifically over Judah.⁵⁰ We have a duty to proclaim the Messiah Yahshua, first to the Jews and then to the (Ephraimites and) Gentiles. As watchman we must let the light of Yahshua shine through us. We need to watch over the souls bestowed to us by YHVH and should always praise Him and make intercession for His people, asking Him to save the remnant of Israel.
- That the key given to those who wish to enter the Kingdom of Heaven is, as stated in Acts 4: 12: ***"There is salvation in no one else, for there is no other Name under heaven, given among men by which we must be saved."*** In John 10: 9 Yahshua said: ***"I am the Door; if anyone enters by Me, he will be saved"***. The disciple Peter knew what the Key was, as Yahshua said to him in Matt 16: 19 ***"I will give you the Keys of the Kingdom of Heaven"***. When asked what they should do, by those to whom he preached to in Acts 2: 38: ***'Peter said unto them, "Repent, and be immersed every one of you in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the remission of sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Set Apart Spirit."***

<p>This book is for educational purposes only and is not to be sold</p>

⁵⁰ Proclaiming Messiah Yahshua has to do with the gospel and as Rav Shaul puts it in Romans 1: 16 'For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of Elohim for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek.' In addition we read in Zechariah 12: 7 that Judah will be saved first, as follows: "YHVH also will save the tents of Judah first in order that the glory of the house of David and the glory of the inhabitants of Jerusalem may not be magnified above Judah."

